Apple II
Reference
Manual

January 1978

APPLE II
Reference Manual

APPLE II
Reference Manual

January 1978

APPLE II Reference Manual
TABLE OF CONTENTS

GETTING STARTED WITH YOUR APPLE II

Unpacking

Don't throw away the packing material. Save it for the unlikely
event that you may need to return your Apple II for warrantee repair.
If you bought an Apple II Board only, see hardware section in this
manual on how to get started. You should have received the following:

1. Apple II system including mother printed circuit board
    with specified amount of RAM memory and 8K of ROM memory,
    switching power supply, keyboard, and case assembly.

2. Accessories Box including the following:
    a. This manual including warranty card.
    b. Pair of Game Paddles
    c. A.C. Power Cord
    d. Cassette tape with "Breakout"on one side
        and "Color Demos" on the other side.
    e. Cassette recorder interface cable (miniature
        phone jack type)

3. If you purchased a 16K or larger system, your accessory
    box should also contain:
    a. 16K Startrek game cassette with High Resolution
        Graphics Demo ("HIRES") on the flipside.
    b. Applesoft Floating Point Basic Language Cassette
        with an example program on the other side.
    c. Applesoft reference manual

4. In addition other items such as a vinyl carrying case
    or hobby board peripherial may have been included if
    specifically ordered as "extras".

Notify your dealer or Apple Computer, Inc. immediately if you are
missing any items.

Warranty Registration Card

Fill this card out immediately and completely and mail to Apple in
order to register for one year warranty and to be placed on
owners club mailing list. Your Apple II's serial number is located
on the bottom near the rear edge. You model number is:

<p style="text-align:center">A2S00MMX</p>

MM is the amount of memory you purchased. For Example:

<p style="text-align:center">A2S0008X</p>

is an 8K Byte Apple II system.

Check for Damage

Inspect the outside case of your Apple for shipping damage. Gently
lift up on the top rear of the lid of the case to release the lid
snaps and remove the lid. Inspect the inside. Nothing should be
loose and rattling around. Gently press down on each integrated
circuit to make sure that each is still firmly seated in its
socket.   Plug in your game paddles into the Apple II board at the
socket marked "GAME I/O" at location J14. See hardware section of
this manual for additional detail. The white dot on the connector
should be face forward. Be careful as this connector is fragile.
Replace the lid and press on the back top of it to re-snap it into
place.

Power Up

First, make sure that the power ON/OFF switch on the rear power
supply panel on your Apple II is in the "OFF" position. Connect
the A.C. power cord to the Apple and to a 3 wire 120 volt A.C.
outlet. Make sure that you connect the third wire to ground if
you have only a two conductor house wiring system. This ground
is for your safety if there is an internal failure in the Apple
power supply, minimizes the chance of static damage to the Apple,
and minimizes RFI problems.

Connect a cable from the video output jack on the back of the Apple
to a TV set with a direct video input jack. This type of set is
commonly called a "Monitor". If your set does not have a direct
video input, it is possible to modify your existing set. Write for
Apple's Application note on this. Optionally you may connect the
Apple to the antenna terminals of your TV if you use a modulator.
See additional details in the hardware section of this manual under
"Interfacing with the Home TV".

Now turn on the power switch on the back of the Apple. The indicator
light (it's not a switch) on the keyboard should now be ON. If
not, check A.C. connections. Press and release the "Reset" button
on the keyboard. The following should happen: the Apple's internal
speaker should beep, an asterisk ("*") prompt character should appear
at the lower left hand corner of your TV, and a flashing white square
should appear just to the right of the asterisk. The rest of the
TV screen will be made up of radom text characters (typically question marks).

If the Apple beeps and garbage appears but you cannot see an "*" and the
cursor, the horizontal or vertical height settings on the TV need to be
adjusted. Now depress and release the "ESC" key, then hold down the
"SHIFT" key while depressing and releasing the P key. This should
clear your TV screen to all black. Now depress and release the "RESET"
key again. The "*" prompt character and the cursor should return to
the lower left of your TV screen.

Apple Speaks Several Languages

The prompt character indicates which language your Apple is currently in. The current prompt character, an asterisk ("*"), indicates that you are in the "Monitor" language, a powerful machine level language for advanced programmers. Details of this language are in the "Firmware" section of this manual.

Apple Integer BASIC

Apple also contains a high level English oriented language called Integer BASIC, permanently in its ROM memory. To switch to this language hold down the "CTRL" key while depressing and releasing the "B" key. This is called a control-B function and is similiar to the use of the shift key in that it indicates a different function to the Apple. Control key functions are not displayed on your TV screen but the Apple still gets the message. Now depress and release the "RETURN" key to tell Apple that you have finished typing a line on the keyboard. A right facing arrow (">") called a caret will now appear as the prompt character to indicate that Apple is now in its Interger BASIC language mode.

Running Your First and Second Program

Read through the next three sections that include:

1. Loading a BASIC program Tape

2. Breakout Game Tape

3. Color Demo Tape

Then load and run each program tape. Additional information on Apple II's interger BASIC is in the next section of this manual.

Running 16K Startrek

If you have 16K Bytes or larger memory in your Apple, you will also receive a "STARTREK" game tape. Load this program just as you did the previous two, but before you "RUN" it, type in "HIMEM: 16384" to set exactly where in memory this program is to run.

LOADING A PROGRAM TAPE

INTRODUCTION

This section describes a procedure for loading BASIC programs successfully into the Apple II. The process of loading a program is divided into three section; System Checkout, Loading a Tape and What to do when you have Loading Problems. They are discussed below.

When loading a tape, the Apple II needs a signal of about 2 1/2 to 5 volts peak-to-peak. Commonly, this signal is obtained from the "Monitor" or "earphone" output jack on the tape recorder. Inside most tape recorders, this signal is derived from the tape recorder's speaker. One can take advantage of this fact when setting the volume levels. Using an Apple Computer pre-recorded tape, and with all cables disconnected, play the tape and adjust the volume to a loud but un-distorted level. You will find that this volume setting will be quite close to the optimum setting.

Some tape recorders (mostly those intended for use with hi-fi sets) do not have an "earphone" or high-level "monitor" output. These machines have outputs labeled "line output" for connection to the   power amplifier. The signal levels at these outputs are too low for the Apple II in most cases.

Cassette tape recorders in the $4\emptyset$ - $5\emptyset$ range generally have ALC (Automatic Level Control) for recording from the microphone input. This feature is useful since the user doesn't have to set any volume controls to obtain a good recording. If you are using a recorder which must be adjusted, it will have a level meter or a little light to warn of excessive recording levels. Set the recording level to just below the level meter's maximum, or to just a dim indication on the level lamp. Listen to the recorded tape after you've saved a program to ensure that the recording is "loud and clear".

Apple Computer has found that an occasional tape recorder will not function properly when both Input and Output cables are plugged in at the same time. This problem has been traced to a ground loop in the tape recorder itself which prevents making a good recording when saving a program. The easiest solution is to unplug the "monitor" output when recording. This ground loop does not influence the system when loading a pre-recorded tape.

4

Tape recorder head alignment is the most common source of tape recorder problems. If the playback head is skewed, then high frequency information on pre-recorded tapes is lost and all sorts of errors will result. To confirm that head alignment is the problem, write a short program in BASIC. >10 END is sufficient. Then save this program. And then rewind and load the program. If you can accomplish this easily but cannot load pre-recorded tapes, then head alignment problems are indicated.

Apple Computer pre-recorded tapes are made on the highest quality professional duplicating machines, and these tapes may be used by the service technician to align the tape recorder's heads. The frequency response of the tape recorder should be fairly good; the 6 KHz tone should be not more than 3 db down from a 1 KHz tone, and a 9 KHz tone should be no more than 9 db down. Note that recordings you have made yourself with mis-aligned heads may not not play properly with the heads properly aligned. If you made a recording with a skewed record head, then the tiny magnetic fields on the tape will be skewed as well, thus playing back properly only when the skew on the tape exactly matches the skew of the tape recorder's heads. If you have saved valuable programs with a skewed tape recorder, then borrow another tape recorder, load the programs with the old tape recorder into the Apple, then save them on the borrowed machine. Then have your tape recorder properly aligned.

Listening to the tape can help solve other problems as well. Flaws in the tape, excessive speed variations, and distortion can be detected this way. Saving a program several times in a row is good insurance against tape flaws. One thing to listen for is a good clean tone lasting for at least 3 1/2 seconds is needed by the computer to "set up" for proper loading. The Apple puts out this tone for anout 10 seconds when saving a program, so you normally have 6 1/2 seconds of leeway. If the playback volume is too high, you may pick up tape noise before getting to the set-up tone. Try a lower playback volume.

SYSTEM CHECKOUT

A quick check of the Apple II computer system will help you spot any problems that might be due to improperly placed or missing connections between the Apple II, the cassette interface, the Video display, and the game paddles. This checkout procedure takes just a few seconds to perform and is a good way of insuring that everything is properly connected before the power is turned on.

1. POWER TO APPLE - check that the AC power cord is plugged into an appropriate wall socket, which includes a "true" ground and is connected to the Apple II.

2. CASSETTE INTERFACE - check that at least one cassette cable double ended with miniature phone tip jacks is connected between the Apple II cassette Input port and the tape recorder's MONITOR plug socket.

3. VIDEO DISPLAY INTERFACE -
   a) for a video monitor - check that a cable connects the monitor to the Apple's video output port.
   b) for a standard television - check that an adapter (RF modulator) is plugged into the Apple II (either in the video output (K 14) or the video auxillary socket (J148), and that a cable runs between the television and the Adapter's output socket.

4. GAME PADDLE INTERFACE - if paddles are to be used, check that they are connected into the Game I/O connector (J14) on the right-hand side of the Apple II mainboard.

5. POWER ON - flip on the power switch in back of the Apple II, the "power" indicator on the keyboard will light. Also make sure the video monitor (or TV set) is turned on.

After the Apple II system has been powered up and the video display presents a random matrix of question marks or other text characters the following procedure can be followed to load a BASIC program tape:

1. Hit the RESET key.
   An asterick, "*", should appear on the lefthand side of the screen below the random text pattern. A flashing white cursor will appear to the right of the asterick.

2. Hold down the CTRL key, depress and release the B key, then depress the "RETURN" key and release the "CTRL" key. A right facing arrow should appear on the lefthand side of the screen with a flashing cursor next to it. If it doesn't, repeat steps 1 and 2.

3. Type in the word "LOAD" on the keyboard. You should see the word in between the right facing arrow and the flashing cursor. Do not depress the "RETURN" key yet.

4. Insert the program cassette into the tape recorder and rewind it.

5. If not already set, adjust the Volume control to 5Ø-7Ø% maximum. If present, adjust the Tone control to 8Ø-1ØØ% maximum.

6.   Start the tape recorder in "PLAY" mode and now depress the "RETURN" key on the Apple II.

7.   The cursor will disappear and Apple II will beep in a few seconds when it finds the beginning of the program. If an error message is flashed on the screen, proceed through the steps listed in the Tape Problem section of this paper.

8.   A second beep will sound and the flashing cursor will reappear after the program has been successfully loaded into the computer.

9.   Stop the tape recorder. You may want to rewind the program tape at this time.

10. Type in the word "RUN" and depress the "RETURN" key.

The steps in loading a program have been completed and if everying has gone satisfactorily the program will be operating now.

LOADING PROBLEMS

Occasionally, while attempting to load a BASIC program Apple II beeps and a memory full error is written on the screen. At this time you might wonder what is wrong with the computer, with the program tape, or with the cassette recorder. Stop. This is the time when you need to take a moment and checkout the system rather than haphazardly attempting to resolve the loading problem. Thoughtful action taken here will speed in a program's entry. If you were able to successfully turn on the computer, reset it, and place it into BASIC then the Apple II is probably operating correctly. Before describing a procedure for resolving this loading problem, a discussion of what a memory full error is in order.

The memory full error displayed upon loading a program indicates that not enough (RAM) memory workspace is available to contain the incoming data. How does the computer know this? Information contained in the beginning of the program tape declares the record length of the program. The computer reads this data first and checks it with the amount of free memory. If adequate workspace is available program loading continues. If not, the computer beeps to indicate a problem, displays a memory full error statement, stops the loading procedure, and returns command of the system to the keyboard. Several reasons emerge as the cause of this problem.

Memory Size too Small

Attempting to load a 16K program into a 4K Apple II will generate this kind of error message. It is called loading too large of a program. The solution is straight forward: only load appropriately sized programs into suitably sized systems.

Another possible reason for an error message is that the memory pointers which indicate the bounds of available memory have been preset to a smaller capacity. This could have happened through previous usage of the "HIMEN:" and "LOMEN:" statements. The solution is to reset the pointers by B^C (CTRL B) command. Hold the CTRL key down, depress and release the B key, then depress the RETURN key and release the CTRL key. This will reset the system to maximum capacity.

Cassette Recorder Inadjustment

If the Volume and Tone controls on the cassette recorder are not properly set a memory full error can occur. The solution is to adjust the Volume to 50-70% maximum and the Tone (if it exists) to 80-100% maximum.*

A second common recorder problem is skewed head azimuth. When the tape head is not exactly perpendicular to the edges of the magnetic tape some of the high frequency data on tape can be skipped. This causes missing bits in the data sent to the computer. Since the first data read is record length an error here could cause a memory full error to be generated because the length of the record is inaccurate. The solution: adjust tape head azimuth. It is recommended that a competent technician at a local stereo shop perform this operation.
Often times new cassette recorders will not need this adjustment.

*Apple Computer Inc. has tested many types of cassette recorders and so far the Panasonic RQ-309 DS (less than $40.00) has an excellent track record for program loading.

Tape Problems

A memory full error can result from unintentional noise existing in a program tape. This can be the result of a program tape starting on its header which sometimes causes a glitch going from a nonmagnetic to magnetic recording surface and is interpreted by the computer as the record length. Or, the program tape can be defective due to false erasure, imperfections in the tape, or physical damage. The solution is to take a moment and listen to the tape. If any imperfections are heard then replacement of the tape is called for. Listening to the tape assures that you know what a "good" program tape sounds like. If you have any questions about this please contact your local dealer or Apple for assistance.

If noise or a glitch is heard at the beginning of a tape advance the tape to the start of the program and re-Load the tape.

Dealing with the Loading Problem

With the understanding of what a memory full error is an efficient way of dealing with program tape loading problems is to perform the following procedure:

1. Check the program tape for its memory requirements.
   Be sure that you have a large enough system.

2. Before loading a program reset the memory pointers
   with the B_c (control B) command.

3. In special cases have the tape head azimuth
   checked and adjusted.

4. Check the program tape by listening to it.
   a) Replace it if it is defective, or
   b) start it at the beginning of the program.

5. Then re-LOAD the program tape into the Apple II.

In most cases if the preceeding is followed a good tape load will result.

UNSOLVED PROBLEMS

If you are having any unsolved loading problems, contact your nearest local dealer or Apple Computer Inc.

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

Breakout is a color graphics game for the Apple II computer. The object of the game is to "knock-out' all 16Ø colored bricks from the playing field by hitting them with the bouncing ball. You direct the ball by hitting it with a paddle on the left side of the screen. You control the paddle with one of the Apple's Game Paddle controllers. But watch out: you can only miss the ball five times!

There are eight columns of bricks. As you penetrate through the wall the point value of the bricks increases. A perfect game is 72Ø points; after five balls have been played the computer will display your score and a rating such as "Very Good". "Terrible!", etc. After ten hits of the ball, its speed with double, making the game more difficult. If you break through to the back wall, the ball will rebound back and forth, racking up points.

Breakout is a challenging game that tests your concentration, dexterity, and skill.

REQUIREMENTS

This program will fit into a 4K or greater system.
BASIC is the programming language used.

PLAYING BREAKOUT

1. Load Breakout game following instructions in the "Loading a BASIC Program from Tape" section of this manual.
2. Enter your name and depress RETURN key.
3. If you want standard BREAKOUT colors type in Y or Yes and hit RETURN. The game will then begin.
4. If the answer to the previous questions was N or No then the available colors will be displayed. The player will be asked to choose colors, represented by a number from Ø to 15, for background, even bricks, odd bricks, paddle and ball colors. After these have been chosen the game will begin.

5. At the end of the game you will be asked if they want to play again. A Y or Yes response will start another game. A N or No will exit from the program.

NOTE: A game paddle (150k ohm potentiometer) must be connected to PDL (0) of the Game I/O connector for this game.

COLOR DEMO TAPE

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

COLOR DEMO demonstrates some of the Apple II video graphics capabilities. In it are ten examples: Lines, Cross, Weaving, Tunnel, Circle, Spiral, Tones, Spring, Hyperbola, and Color Bars. These examples produce various combinations of visual patterns in fifteen colors on a monitor or television screen. For example, Spiral combines colorgraphics with tones to produce some amusing patterns. Tones illustrates various sounds that you can produce with the two inch Apple speaker. These examples also demonstrate how the paddle inputs (PDL(X)) can be used to control the audio and visual displays. Ideas from this program can be incorporated into other programs with a little modification.

REQUIREMENTS

4K or greater Apple II system, color monitor or television, and paddles are needed to use this program. BASIC is the programming language used.

PROGRAM LISTING

```
5 GOTO 15
10 Q=( PDL (0)-20)/6: IF Q<0 THEN
   Q=0: IF Q)=34 THEN Q=34: COLOR=
   D: VLIN Q,Q+5 AT 0: COLOR=A:
   IF P)Q THEN 175: IF Q THEN
   VLIN 0,Q-1 AT 0:P=Q: RETURN

15 DIM A$(15),B$(10):A=1:B=13:
   C=9:D=6:E=15: TEXT : CALL -
   936: VTAB 4: TAB 10: PRINT
   "*** BREAKOUT ***": PRINT
20 PRINT "    OBJECT IS TO DESTROY
   ALL BRICKS": PRINT : INPUT
   "HI, WHAT'S YOUR NAME? ",A$

25 PRINT "STANDARD COLORS ";A$
   ;: INPUT " Y/N? ",B$: GR : CALL
   -936: IF B$(1,1)#"N" THEN 40
   : FOR I=0 TO 39: COLOR=I/2*
   (I(32): VLIN 0,39 AT I
30 NEXT I: POKE 34,20: PRINT :
   PRINT : PRINT : FOR I=0 TO
   15: VTAB 21+I MOD 2: TAB I+
   I+1: PRINT I;: NEXT I: POKE
   34,22: VTAB 24: PRINT : PRINT
   "BACKGROUND";
35 GOSUB 95:A=E: PRINT "EVEN BRICK"
   ;: GOSUB 95:B=E: PRINT "ODD BRIC
   K";: GOSUB 95:C=E: PRINT "PADDLE
   ";: GOSUB 95:D=E: PRINT "BALL"
   ;: GOSUB 95
40 POKE 34,20: COLOR=A: FOR I=
   0 TO 39: VLIN 0,39 AT I: NEXT
   I: FOR I=20 TO 34 STEP 2: TAB
   I+1: PRINT I/2-9;: COLOR=B:
   VLIN 0,39 AT I: COLOR=C: FOR
   J=I MOD 4 TO 39 STEP 4
```

```
45 VLIN J,J+1 AT I: NEXT J,I: TAB
   5: PRINT "SCORE = 0": PRINT
   : PRINT : POKE 34,21:S=0:P=
   5:L=5:X=19:Y=19:L=6
50 COLOR=A: PLOT X,Y/3:X=19:Y=
   RND (120):V=-1:W= RND (5)-
   2:L=L-1: IF L<1 THEN 120: TAB
   6: IF L)1 THEN PRINT L;" BALLS L
   EFT"
55 IF L=1 THEN PRINT "LAST BALL, "
   ;A$: PRINT : FOR I=1 TO 100
   : GOSUB 10: NEXT I:W=1:N=0
60 J=Y+W: IF J)=0 AND J(120 THEN
   65:W=-W:J=Y: FOR I=1 TO 6:K=
   PEEK (-16336): NEXT I
65 I=X+V: IF I(0 THEN 180: GOSUB
   170: COLOR=A:K=J/3: IF I)39
   THEN 75: IF SCRN(I,K)=A THEN
   85: IF I THEN 100:N=N+1:V=(
   N)5)+1:W=(K-P)*2-5:N=1
70 Z= PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
   )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
   )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
   )+ PEEK (-16336): GOTO 85
75 FOR I=1 TO 6:W= PEEK (-16336
   ): NEXT I:I=X:N=0
80 V=-V
85 PLOT X,Y/3: COLOR=E: PLOT I,
   K:X=I:Y=J: GOTO 60
90 PRINT "INVALID. REENTER";
95 INPUT " COLOR (0 TO 15)",E:
   IF E(0 OR E)15 THEN 90: RETURN
```

```
100 IF W THEN V= ABS (V): VLIN
    K/2*2,K/2*2+1 AT I:S=S+I/2-
    9: VTAB 21: TAB 13: PRINT S
105 Q= PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
    )+ PEEK (-16366)- PEEK (-16336
    )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
    )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
    )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
    )
110 IF S<720 THEN 80
115 PRINT "CONGRATULATIONS, ";A$
    ;" YOU WIN!": GOTO 165
120 PRINT "YOUR SCORE OF ";S;" IS "
    ;: GOTO 125+(S/100)*5
125 PRINT "TERRIBLE!": GOTO 165

130 PRINT "LOUSY.": GOTO 165
135 PRINT "POOR.": GOTO 165
140 PRINT "FAIR.": GOTO 165
145 PRINT "GOOD.": GOTO 165
150 PRINT "VERY GOOD.": GOTO 165

155 PRINT "EXCELLENT.": GOTO 165

160 PRINT "NEARLY PERFECT."
165 PRINT "ANOTHER GAME ";A$;" (Y/N)
    ";: INPUT A$: IF A$(1,1)="Y"
    THEN 25: TEXT : CALL -936:
    VTAB 10: TAB 10: PRINT "GAME OV
    ER": END
170 Q=( PDL (0)-20)/6: IF Q<0 THEN
    Q=0: IF Q)=34 THEN Q=34: COLOR=
    D: VLIN Q,Q+5 AT 0: COLOR=A:
    IF P)Q THEN 175: IF Q THEN
    VLIN 0,Q-1 AT 0:P=Q: RETURN

175 IF P=Q THEN RETURN : IF Q#34
    THEN VLIN Q+6,39 AT 0:P=Q:
    RETURN
180 FOR I=1 TO 80:Q= PEEK (-16336
    ): NEXT I: GOTO 50
```

COLOR DEMO PROGRAM
LISTING

PROGRAM LISTING

```
10 DIM C(4): POKE 2,173: POKE
   3,48: POKE 4,192: POKE 5,165
   : POKE 6,0: POKE 7,32: POKE
   8,168: POKE 9,252: POKE 10,
   165: POKE 11,1: POKE 12,208

20 POKE 13,4: POKE 14,198: POKE
   15,24: POKE 16,240: POKE 17
   ,5: POKE 18,198: POKE 19,1:
   POKE 20,76: POKE 21,2: POKE
   22,0: POKE 23,96

30 TEXT : CALL -936: VTAB 4: TAB
   8: PRINT "4K COLOR DEMOS": PRINT
   : PRINT "1 LINES": PRINT "2 CROS
   S": PRINT "3 WEAVING"

40 PRINT "4 TUNNEL": PRINT "5 CIRCL
   E": PRINT "6 SPIRAL **": PRINT
   "7 TONES ** ": PRINT "8 SPRING"

50 PRINT "9 HYPERBOLA": PRINT
   "10 COLOR BARS": PRINT : PRINT
   "** NEEDS PDL(0) CONNECTED"
   : PRINT

60 PRINT "HIT ANY KEY FOR NEW DEMO"
   :Z=0: PRINT : INPUT "WHICH DEMO
   # ",I: GR : IF I>0 AND I<11
   THEN GOTO 100*I: GOTO 30

70 INPUT "WHICH DEMO WOULD YOU LIKE
   ",I: GR : IF I AND I<20 THEN
   GOTO 100*I: GOTO 30

100 I=1+I MOD 79:J=1+(I)39)*(79
    -I-I): GOSUB 2000: GOSUB 10000
    : GOTO 100

200 I=1+I MOD 39:J=I: GOSUB 2000
    :J=39-I: GOSUB 2000: GOSUB
    10000: GOTO 200

300 J=J+1:J=J MOD 22+1: FOR I=1
    TO 1295: COLOR=I MOD J*7: PLOT
    (2*I) MOD 37,(3*I) MOD 35: NEXT
    I: GOSUB 10000: GOTO 300

400 FOR I=1 TO 4:C(I)= RND (16)
    : NEXT I

410 FOR I=3 TO 1 STEP -1:C(I+1)
    =C(I): NEXT I:C(1)= RND (16
    ): FOR I=1 TO 5: FOR J=1 TO
    4

420 COLOR=C(J):L=J*5+14+I:K=39-
    L: HLIN K,L AT K: VLIN K,L AT
    L: HLIN K,L AT L: VLIN K,L AT
    K: NEXT J,I: GOSUB 10000: GOTO
    410

500 Z=20: GOTO 900

600 COLOR= RND (16): FOR I=0 TO
    18 STEP 2:J=39-I: HLIN I,J AT
    I: GOSUB 640: VLIN I,J AT J:
    GOSUB 640

610 HLIN I+2,J AT J: GOSUB 640:
    VLIN I+2,J AT I+2: GOSUB 640
    : NEXT I

620 COLOR= RND (16): FOR I=18 TO
    0 STEP -2:J=39-I: VLIN I+2,
    J AT I+2: GOSUB 640: HLIN I+
    2,J AT J: GOSUB 640

630 VLIN I,J AT J: GOSUB 640: HLIN
    I,J AT I: GOSUB 640: NEXT I:
    GOSUB 10000: GOTO 600

640 K=I+7:L=K*K*5+K*26+70:L=32767
    /L*( PDL (0)/10): POKE 0,K:
    POKE 1,L MOD 256: POKE 24,
    L/256+1: CALL 2: RETURN

700 I= RND (30)+3:J=I*I*5+I*26+
    70:K=32767/J*( PDL (0)/10):
    POKE 0,I: POKE 1,K MOD 256
    : POKE 24,(K)255)+1: CALL 2
    : GOSUB 10000: GOTO 700

800 X=3:A=1000:P=A:L=20:W=4:Y=0
    :J=1: COLOR=6: HLIN 0,39 AT
    4: COLOR=9: GOSUB 880: COLOR=
    12: VLIN 5,M-2 AT X

810 M=2*A-P-A/W: COLOR=0: GOSUB
    880: VLIN 5,39 AT X:X=X+1: IF
    X<39 THEN 820:X=3: VLIN 5,39
    AT 1: VLIN 5,39 AT 2

820 P=A:A=M:Y=A/100: COLOR=12: GOSUB
    880: COLOR=9: VLIN 5,M-2 AT
    X: COLOR=15: PLOT X-2,M: FOR
    I=0 TO J: NEXT I: GOSUB 10000
    : GOTO 810

880 M=L-Y:L1=M-1:L2=M+1: VLIN L1,
    L2 AT X-1: VLIN L1,L2 AT X:
    VLIN L1,L2 AT X+1: RETURN

900 I=1+I MOD 15: FOR Y=0 TO 39
    : FOR X=0 TO 39: COLOR=I+( ABS
    (20-X)-Z)*( ABS (20-Y)-Z)/25
    : PLOT X,Y: NEXT X,Y: GOSUB
    10000: GOTO 900

1000 CALL -936

1010 J=1+J MOD 32: COLOR=J/2: VLIN
     0,39 AT 3+J: VTAB 21+(J/2) MOD
     2: TAB 3+J: IF J MOD 2 THEN
     PRINT J/2;: GOSUB 10000: GOTO
     1010

2000 COLOR= RND (16): HLIN 0,39 AT
     J: COLOR= RND (16): VLIN 0,
     39 AT J: RETURN

10000 IF PEEK (-16384)<128 THEN RETURN
      : POKE -16368,0: POP : GOTO
      30
```

THIS IS A SHORT DESCRIPTION OF HOW TO PLAY STARTREK ON THE
APPLE COMPUTER.

THE UNIVERSE IS MADE UP OF 64 QUADRANTS IN AN 8 BY 8 MATRIX.
THE QUADRANT IN WHICH YOU "THE ENTERPRISE " ARE, IS IN WHITE,
AND A BLOW UP OF THAT QUADRANT IS FOUND IN THE LOWER LEFT
CORNER.   YOUR SPACE SHIP STATUS IS FOUND IN A TABLE TO
THE RIGHT SIDE OF THE QUADRANT BLOW UP.
     THIS IS A SEARCH AND DESTROY MISSION.   THE OBJECT IS TO LONG-RANGE
SENSE FOR INFORMATION AS TO WHERE KLINGONS (K) ARE, MOVE TO THAT QUADRANT,
AND DESTROY.
          NUMBERS DISPLAYED FOR EACH QUADRANT DENOTE:
                                        # OF STARS IN THE ONES PLACE
                                        # OF BASES IN THE TENS PLACE
                                        # OF KLINGONS IN THE HUNDREDS PLACE
     AT ANY TIME DURING THE GAME, FOR INSTANCE BEFORE ONE TOTALLY
RUNS OUT OF ENERGY, OR NEEDS TO REGENERATE ALL SYSTEMS, ONE MOVES TO A
QUADRANT WHICH INCLUDES A BASE, IONS NEXT TO THAT BASE (B) AT WHICH TIME
THE BASE SELF-DESTRUCTS AND THE ENTERPRISE (E) HAS ALL SYSTEMS "GO"
AGAIN.

   TO PLAY:
1. THE COMMANDS CAN BE OBTAINED BY TYPING A "0" (ZERO) AND RETURN.
   THEY ARE:
                 1. PROPULSION   2. REGENERATE
                 3. LONG RANGE SENSORS   4. PHASERS
                 5. PHOTON TORPEDOES   6. GALAXY RECORD
                 7. COMPUTER   8. PROBE
                 9. SHIELD ENERGY   10.DAMAGE REPORT
                 11.LOAD PHOTON TORPEDOES
2. THE COMANDS ARE INVOKED BY TYPING THE NUMBER REFERING TO THEM
        FOLLOWED BY A "RETURN".
        A. IF RESPONSE IS 1 THE COMPUTER WILL ASK WARP OR ION AND
                EXPECTS "W" IF ONE WANTS TO TRAVEL IN THE GALAXY
                BETWEEN QUADRANTS AND AN "I" IF ONE WANTS ONLY
                INTERNAL QUADRANT TRAVEL.
                DURATION OR WARP FACTOR IS THE NUMBER OF SPACES OR
                QUADRANTS THE ENTERPRISE WILL MOVE.
                COURSE IS COMPASS READING IN DEGREES FOR THE DESI-
                RED DESTINATION.
        B. A 2 REGENERATES THE ENERGY AT THE EXPENSE OF TIME.
        C. A 3 GIVES THE CONTENTS OF THE IMMEDIATE ADJACENT QUADRANTS.
                THE GALAXY IS WRAP-AROUND IN ALL DIRECTIONS.
        D. 4 FIRES PHASERS AT THE EXPENSE OF AVAILABLE ENERGY.

        E. 5 INITIATES A SET OF QUESTIONS FOR TORPEDO FIRING.
                THEY CAN BE FIRED AUTOMATICALLY IF THEY HAVE
                BEEN LOCKED ON TARGET WHILE IN THE COMPUTER
                MODE, OR MAY BE FIRED MANUALLY IF THE TRAGECTORY ANGLE
                IS KNOWN.
        F. 6, 8 AND 10 ALL GIVE INFORMATION ABOUT THE STATUS OF THE SHIP
                AND ITS ENVIRONMENT.
        G. 9 SETS THE SHIELD ENERGY/AVAILABLE ENERGY RATIO.
        H. 11 ASKS FOR INFORMATION ON LOADING AND UNLOADING OF
                PHOTON TORPEDOES AT THE ESPENSE OF AVAILABLE ENERGY.
                        THE ANSWER SHOULD BE A SIGNED NUMBER. FOR EXAMPLE
                        +5 OR -2.
        I. 7 ENTERS A COMPUTER WHICH WILL RESPOND TO THE FOLLOWING
                INSTRUCTIONS:
                        1. COMPUTE COURSE   2. LOCK PHASERS
                        3. LOCK PHOTON TORPEDOES
                        4. LOCK COURSE   5. COMPUTE TREJECTORY
                        6. STATUS   7. RETURN TO COMAND MODE
                IN THE FIRST FIVE ONE WILL HAVE TO GIVE COORDINATES.
                COORDINATES ARE GIVEN IN MATHMATICAL NOTATION WITH
                THE EXCEPTION THAT THE "Y" VALUE IS GIVEN FIRST.
                AN EXAMPLE WOULD BE "Y,X"

        COURSE OR TRAJECTORY:

                                0
                                !
                                !
                                !
                                !
                270-------------+-------------90
                                !
                                !
                                !
                               180

14
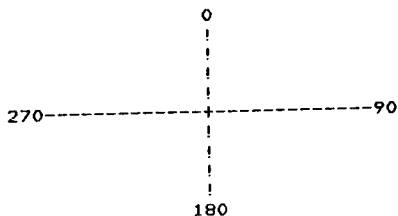
LOADING THE HI-RES DEMO TAPE

PROCEDURE

1. Power up system - turn the AC power switch in the back of the Apple II on. You should see a random matrix of question marks and other text characters. If you don't, consult the operator's manual for system checkout procedures.

2. Hit the RESET key. On the left hand side of the screen you should see an asterisk and a flashing cursor next to it below the text matrix.

3. Insert the HI-RES demo tape into the cassette and rewind it. Check Volume (5Ø-7Ø%) and Tone (8Ø-1ØØ%) settings.

4. Type in "CØØ.FFFR" on the Apple II keyboard. This is the address range of the high resolution machine language subprogram. It extends from $CØØ to $FFF. The R tells the computer to read in the data. Do not depress the "RETURN" key yet.

5. Start the tape recorder in playback mode and depress the "RETURN" key. The flashing cursor disappears.

6. A beep will sound after the program has been read in. STOP the tape recorder. Do not rewind the program tape yet.

7. Hold down the "CTRL" key, depress and release the B key, then depress the "RETURN" key and release the "CTRL" key. You should see a right facing arrow and a flashing cursor. The B^C command places the Apple into BASIC initializing the memory pointers.

8. Type in "LOAD", restart the tape recorder in playback mode and hit the "RETURN" key. The flashing cursor disappears. This begins the loading of the BASIC subprogram of the HI-RES demo tape.

9. A beep will sound to indicate the program is being loaded.

10. A second beep will sound, and the right facing arrow will reappear with the flashing cursor. STOP the tape recorder. Rewind the tape.

11. Type in "HIMEM:8192" and hit the "RETURN" key. This sets up memory for high resolution graphics.

12. Type in "RUN" and hit the "RETURN" key. The screen should clear and momentarily a HI-RES demo menu table should appear. The loading sequence is now completed.

SUMMARY OF HI-RES DEMO TAPE LOADING

1. RESET

2. Type in CØØ.FFFR

3. Start tape recorder, hit RETURN

4. Asterick or flashing cursor reappear B^C (CTRL B) into BASIC

5. Type in "LOAD", hit RETURN

6. BASIC prompt (7) and flashing cursor reappear. Type in "HIMEN:8192", hit RETURN

7. Type in "RUN", hit RETURN

8. STOP tape recorder, rewind tape.

APPLE II INTEGER BASIC

BASIC COMMANDS

Commands are executed immediately; they do not require line numbers. Most Statements (see Basic Statements Section) may also be used as commands. Remember to press Return key after each command so that Apple knows that you have finished that line. Multiple commands (as opposed to statements) on same line separated by a " : " are NOT allowed.

COMMAND NAME

AUTO *num*   Sets automatic line numbering mode. Starts at line number *num* and increments line numbers by 10. To exit AUTO mode, type a control X*, then type the letters "MAN" and press the return key.

AUTO *num1, num2*   Same as above execept increments line numbers by number *num2*.

CLR   Clears current BASIC variables; undimensions arrays. Program is unchanged.

CON   Continues program execution after a stop from a control C*. Does not change variables.

DEL *num1*   Deletes line number *num1*.

DEL *num1, num2*   Deletes program from line number *num1* through line number *num2*.

DSP *var*   Sets debug mode that will display variable *var* every-time that it is changed along with the line number that caused the change. (NOTE: RUN command clears DSP mode so that DSP command is effective only if program is continued by a CON or GOTO command.)

HIMEM: *expr*   Sets highest memory location for use by BASIC at location specified by expression *expr* in <u>decimal</u>. HIMEM: may not be increased without destroying program. HIMEM: is automatically set at maximum RAM memory when BASIC is entered by a control B*.

GOTO *expr*   Causes immediate jump to line number specified by expression *expr*.

GR   Sets mixed color graphics display mode. Clears screen to black. Resets scrolling window. Displays 4Øx4Ø squares in 15 colors on top of screen and 4 lines of text at bottom.

LIST   Lists entire program on screen.

LIST *num1*   Lists program line number *num1*.

LIST *num1, num2*   Lists program line number *num1* through line number *num2*.

<u>LOAD</u> *expr.*	Reads (Loads) a BASIC program from cassette tape. Start tape recorder before hitting return key. Two beeps and a " > " indicate a good load. "ERR" or "MEM" FULL ERR" message indicates a bad tape or poor recorder performance.
<u>LOMEM:</u> *expr*	Similar to HIMEM: except sets lowest memory location available to BASIC. Automatically set at 2048 when BASIC is entered with a control B*. Moving LOMEM: destroys current variable values.
<u>MAN</u>	Clears AUTO line numbering mode to all manual line numbering after a control C* or control X*.
<u>NEW</u>	Clears (Scratches) current BASIC program.
<u>NO DSP</u> *var*	Clears DSP mode for variable *var*.
<u>NO TRACE</u>	Clears TRACE mode.
<u>RUN</u>	Clears variables to zero, undimensions all arrays and executes program starting at lowest statement line number.
<u>RUN</u> *expr*	Clears variables and executes program starting at line number specified by expression *expr*.
<u>SAVE</u>	Stores (saves) a BASIC program on a cassette tape. Start tape recorder in record mode prior to hitting return key.
<u>TEXT</u>	Sets all text mode. Screen is formated to display alpha-numeric characters on 24 lines of 40 characters each. TEXT resets scrolling window to maximum.
<u>TRACE</u>	Sets debug mode that displays line number of each statement as it is executed.

* Control characters such as control X or control C are typed by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. This is similiar to how one holds down the shift key to type capital letters. Control characters are NOT displayed on the screen but are accepted by the computer. For example, type several control G's. We will also use a superscript C to indicate a control character as in X^C.

BASIC Operators

Symbol	Sample Statement	Explanation

Prefix Operators

Symbol	Sample Statement	Explanation
( )	10 X= 4*(5 + X)	Expressions within parenthesis ( ) are always evaluated first.
+	20 X= 1+4*5	Optional; +1 times following expression.
-	30 ALPHA = -(BETA +2)	Negation of following expression.
NOT	40 IF A NOT B THEN 200	Logical Negation of following expression; 0 if expression is true (non-zero), 1 if expression is false (zero).

Arithmetic Operators

Symbol	Sample Statement	Explanation
↑	60 Y = X↑3	Exponentiate as in X^3. NOTE: ↑ is shifted letter N.
*	70 LET DOTS=A*B*N2	Multiplication. NOTE: Implied multiplication such as (2 + 3)(4) is not allowed thus N2 in example is a variable not N * 2.
/	80 PRINT GAMMA/S	Divide
MOD	90 X = 12 MOD 7 100 X = X MOD(Y+2)	Modulo: Remainder after division of first expression by second expression.
+	110 P = L + G	Add
-	120 XY4 = H-D	Substract
=	130 HEIGHT=15 140 LET SIZE=7*5 150 A(8) = 2 155 ALPHA$ = "PLEASE"	Assignment operator; assigns a value to a variable. LET is optional

Relational and Logical Operators

The numeric values used in logical evaluation are "true" if non-zero, "false" if zero.

Symbol	Sample Statement	Explanation
=	16∅ IF D = E THEN 5∅∅	Expression "equals" expression.
=	17∅ IF A$(1,1)= "Y" THEN 5∅∅	String variable "equals" string variable.
# or < >	18∅ IF ALPHA #X*Y THEN 5∅∅	Expression "does not equal" expression.
#	19∅ IF A$ # "NO" THEN 5∅∅	String variable "does not equal" string variable. NOTE: If strings are not the same length, they are considered un-equal. < > not allowed with strings.
>	2∅∅ IF A>B THEN GO TO 5∅	Expression "is greater than" expression.
<	21∅ IF A+1<B-5 THEN 1∅∅	Expression "is less than" expression.
>=	22∅ IF A>=B THEN 1∅∅	Expression "is greater than or equal to" expression.
<=	23∅ IF A+1<=B-6 THEN 2∅∅	Expression "is less than or equal to" expression.
AND	24∅ IF A>B AND C<D THEN 2∅∅	Expression 1 "and" expression 2 must both be "true" for statements to be true.
OR	25∅ IF ALPHA OR BETA+1 THEN 2∅∅	If either expression 1 or expression 2 is "true", statement is "true".

BASIC FUNCTIONS

Functions return a numeric result. They may be used as expressions or as part of expressions. PRINT is used for examples only, other statements may be used. Expressions following function name must be enclosed between two parenthesis signs.

FUNCTION NAME

ABS *(expr)*   300 PRINT ABS(X)   Gives absolute value of the expression *expr*.

ASC *(str$)*
```
310 PRINT ASC("BACK")
320 PRINT ASC(B$)
330 PRINT ASC(B$(4,4))
335 PRINT ASC(B$(Y))
```
Gives decimal ASCII value of designated string variable *str$*. If more than one character is in designated string or sub-string, it gives decimal ASCII value of first character.

LEN *(str$)*   340 PRINT LEN(B$)   Gives current length of designated string variable *str$*; i.e., number of characters.

PDL *(expr)*   350 PRINT PDL(X)   Gives number between 0 and 255 corresponding to paddle position on game paddle number designated by expression *expr* and must be legal paddle (0,1,2,or 3) or else 255 is returned.

PEEK *(expr)*   360 PRINT PEEK(X)   Gives the decimal value of number stored of decimal memory location specified by expression *expr*. For MEMORY locations above 32676, use negative number; i.e., HEX location FFF0 is -16

RND *(expr)*   370 PRINT RND(X)   Gives random number between 0 and (expression *expr* -1) if expression *expr* is positive; if minus, it gives random number between 0 and (expression *expr* +1).

SCRN(*expr1*, *expr2*)   380 PRINT SCRN (X1,Y1)   Gives color (number between 0 and 15) of screen at horizontal location designated by expression *expr1* and vertical location designated by expression *expr2* Range of expression *expr1* is 0 to 39. Range of expression *expr2* is 0 to 39 if in standard mixed colorgraphics display mode as set by GR command or 0 to 47 if in all color mode set by POKE -16304 ,0: POKE - 16302,0.

SGN *(expr)*   390 PRINT SGN(X)   Gives sign (not sine) of expression *expr* i.e., -1 if expression *expr* is negative, zero if zero and +1 if *expr* is positive.

BASIC STATEMENTS

Each BASIC statement must have a line number between 0 and 32767. Variable names must start with an alpha character and may be any number of alphanumeric characters up to 100.   Variable names may not contain buried any of the following words: AND, AT, MOD, OR, STEP, or THEN. Variable names may not begin with the letters END, LET, or REM. String variables names must end with a $ (dollar sign). Multiple statements may appear under the same line number if separated by a : (colon) as long as the total number of characters in the line (including spaces) is less than approximately 150 characters
Most statements may also be used as commands. BASIC statements are executed by RUN or GOTO commands.

NAME

CALL *expr*

10 CALL-936

Causes execution of a machine level language subroutine at <u>decimal</u> memory location specified by expression *expr* Locations above 32767 are specified using negative numbers; i.e., location in example 10 is hexidecimal number $FC53

COLOR=*expr*

30 COLOR=12

In standard resolution color (GR) graphics mode, this command sets screen TV color to value in expression *expr* in the range 0 to 15 as described in Table A.   Actually expression *expr* may be in the range 0 to 255 without error message since it is implemented as if it were expression *expr* MOD 16.

DIM *var1 (expr1)*
  str$ (expr2)
  var2 (expr3)

50 DIM A(20),B(10)
60 DIM B$(30)
70 DIM C (2)
Illegal:
  80 DIM A(30)
Legal:
  85 DIM C(1000)

The DIM statement causes APPLE II to reserve memory for the specified variables. For number arrays   APPLE reserves approximately 2 times *expr* bytes of memory limited by available memory. For string arrays - *str$ (expr)* must be in the range of 1 to 255. Last defined variable may be redimensioned at any time; thus, example in line is illegal but 85 is allowed.

DSP *var*

Legal:
  90 DSP AX: DSP L
Illegal:
  100 DSP AX,B
  102 DSP AB$
  104 DSP A(5)
Legal:
  105 A=A(5): DSP A

Sets debug mode that DSP variable *var* each time it changes and the line number where the change occured.

NAME	EXAMPLE	DESCRIPTION
<u>END</u>	110 END	Stops program execution. Sends carriage return and "> " BASIC prompt) to screen.
<u>FOR</u> $var=$ $expr1$ TO $expr2$ STEP $expr3$	110 FOR L=0 to 39 120 FOR X=Y1 TO Y3 130 FOR I=39 TO 1 150 GOSUB 100 *J2	Begins FOR...NEXT loop, initializes variable var to value of expression $expr1$ then increments it by amount in expression $expr3$ each time the corresponding "NEXT" statement is encountered, until value of expression $expr2$ is reached. If STEP $expr3$ is omitted, a STEP of +1 is assumed. Negative numbers are allowed.
<u>GOSUB</u> $expr$	140 GOSUB 500	Causes branch to BASIC subroutine starting at legal line number specified by expression $expr$ Subroutines may be nested up to 16 levels.
<u>GOTO</u> $expr$	160 GOTO 200 170 GOTO ALPHA+100	Causes immediate jump to legal line number specified by expression $expr$.
<u>GR</u>	180 GR 190 GR: POKE -16302,0	Sets mixed standard resolution color graphics mode. Initializes COLOR = 0 (Black) for top 40x40 of screen and sets scrolling window to lines 21 through 24 by 40 characters for four lines of text at bottom of screen. Example 190 sets all color mode (40x48 field) with no text at bottom of screen.
<u>HLIN</u> $expr1$, $expr2$ AT $expr3$	200 HLIN 0,39 AT 20 210 HLIN Z,Z+6 AT I	In standard resolution color graphics mode, this command draws a horizontal line of a predefined color (set by COLOR=) starting at horizontal position defined by expression $expr1$ and ending at position $expr2$ at vertical position defined by expression $expr3$. $expr1$ and $expr2$ must be in the range of 0 to 39 <u>and</u> $expr1 <= expr2$. $expr3$ be in the range of 0 to 39 (or 0 to 47 if not in mixed mode).

Note: HLIN 0, 19 AT 0 is a horizontal line at the top of the screen extending from left corner to center of screen and HLIN 20,39 AT 39 is a horizontal line at the bottom of the screen extending from center to right corner.

IF *expression* **THEN** *statement*	220 IF A > B THEN
	    PRINT A
	230 IF X=∅ THEN C=1
	240 IF A#10 THEN
	    GOSUB 200
	250 IF A$(1,1)# "Y"
	    THEN 100
	Illegal:
	260 IF L > 5 THEN 5∅:
	    ELSE 6∅
	Legal:
	270 IF L > 5 THEN 5∅
	    GO TO 6∅
		If *expression* is true (non-zero) then execute *statement*; if false do not execute *statement*. If *statement* is an expression, then a GOTO *expr* type of statement is assumed to be implied. The "ELSE" in example 26∅ is illegal but may be implemented as shown in example 27∅.

INPUT *var1, var2, str$*	280 INPUT X,Y,Z(3) 290 INPUT "AMT", DLLR 300 INPUT "Y or N?", A$	Enters data into memory from I/O device. If number input is expected, APPLE wil output "?"; if string input is expected no "?" will be outputed. Multiple numeric inputs to same statement may be separated by a comma or a carriage return. String inputs must be separated by a carriage return only. One pair of " " may be used immediately after INPUT to output prompting text enclosed within the quotation marks to the screen.
IN# *expr*	310 IN# 6 320 IN# Y+2 330 IN# 0	Transfers source of data for subsequent INPUT statements to peripheral I/O slot (1-7) as specified as by expression *expr*. Slot ∅ is not addressable from BASIC. IN#∅ (Example 33∅) is used to return data source from peripherial I/O to keyboard connector.
LET	340 LET X=5	Assignment operator. "LET" is optional
LIST *num1, num2*	350 IF X > 6 THEN LIST 5∅	Causes program from line number *num1* through line number *num2* to be displayed on screen.
NEXT *var1, var2*	360 NEXT I 370 NEXT J,K	Increments corresponding "FOR" variable and loops back to statement following "FOR" until variable exceeds limit.
NO DSP *var*	380 NO DSP I	Turns-off DSP debug mode for variable
NO TRACE	390 NO TRACE	Turns-off TRACE debug mode

Command	Example	Description
<u>PLOT</u> , *expr1, expr2*	400 PLOT 15, 25 400 PLT XV,YV	In standard resolution color graphics, this command plots a small square of a predefined color (set by COLOR=) at horizontal location specified by expression *expr1* in range 0 to 39 and vertical location specified by expression *expr2* in range 0 to 39 (or 0 to 47 if in all graphics mode) NOTE: PLOT 0 0 is upper left and PLOT 39, 39 (or PLOT 39, 47) is lower right corner.
<u>POKE</u> *expr1, expr2*	420 POKE 20, 40 430 POKE 7*256, XMOD255	Stores <u>decimal</u> number defined by expression *expr2* in range of 0 255 at <u>decimal</u> memory location specified by expression *expr1* Locations above 32767 are specified by negative numbers.
<u>POP</u>	440 POP	"POPS" nested GOSUB return stack address by one.
<u>PRINT</u> *var1, var, str$*	450 PRINT L1 460 PRINT L1, X2 470 PRINT "AMT=";DX 480 PRINT A$;B$; 490 PRINT 492 PRINT "HELLO" 494 PRINT 2+3	Outputs data specified by variable *var* or string variable *str$* starting at current cursor location. If there is not trailing "," or ";" (Ex 450) a carriage return will be generated. Commas (Ex. 460) outputs data in 5 left justified columns. Semi-colon (Ex. 470) inhibits print of any spaces. Text imbedded in " " will be printed and may appear multiple times.
<u>PR#</u> *expr*	500 PR# 7	Like IN#, transfers output to I/0 slot defined by expression *expr* PR# 0 is video output not I/O slot 0.
<u>REM</u>	510 REM REMARK	No action. All characters after REM are treated as a remark until terminated by a carriage return.
<u>RETURN</u>	520 RETURN 530 IFX= 5 THEN RETURN	Causes branch to statement following last GOSUB; i.e., RETURN ends a subroutine. Do not confuse "RETURN" <u>statement</u> with Return <u>key</u> on keyboard.

TAB *expr*	530 TAB 24 540 TAB I+24 550 IF A#B THEN TAB 20	Moves cursor to absolute horizontal position specified by expression *expr* in the range of 1 to 40. Position is left to right
TEXT	550 TEXT 560 TEXT: CALL-936	Sets all text mode. Resets scrolling window to 24 lines by 40 characters. Example 560 also clears screen and homes cursor to upper left corner
TRACE	570 TRACE 580 IFN > 32000 THEN TRACE	Sets debug mode that displays each line number as it is executed.
VLIN *expr1, expr2* AT *expr3*	590 VLIN 0, 39AT15 600 VLIN Z,Z+6ATY	Similar to HLIN except draws vertical line starting at *expr1* and ending at *expr2* at horizontal position *expr3*.
VTAB *expr*	610 VTAB 18 620 VTAB Z+2	Similar to TAB. Moves cursor to absolute vertical position specified by expression *expr* in the range 1 to 24. VTAB 1 is top line on screen; VTAB24 is bottom.

SPECIAL CONTROL AND EDITING CHARACTERS

"Control" characters are indicated by a super-scripted "C" such as G^C. They are obtained by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. Control characters are NOT displayed on the TV screen. B^C and C^C must be followed by a carriage return. Screen editing characters are indicated by a sub-scripted "E" such as D_E. They are obtained by pressing and releasing the ESC key then typing specified letter. Edit characters send information only to display screen and does not send data to memory. For example, U^C moves to cursor to right and copies text while A_E moves cursor to right but does not copy text.

CHARACTER	DESCRIPTION OF ACTION
RESET key	Immediately interrupts any program execution and resets computer. Also sets all text mode with scrolling window at maximum. Control is transfered to System Monitor and Apple prompts with a "*" (asterisk) and a bell. Hitting RESET key does NOT destroy existing BASIC or machine language program.
Control B	If in System Monitor (as indicated by a "*"), a control B and a carriage return will transfer control to BASIC, scratching (killing) any existing BASIC program and set HIMEM: to maximum installed user memory and LOMEM: to 2048.
Control C	If in BASIC, halts program and displays line number where stop occurred*. Program may be continued with a CON command. If in System Monitor, (as indicated by "*"), control C and a carraige return will enter BASIC without killing current program.
Control G	Sounds bell (beeps speaker)
Control H	Backspaces cursor and deletes any overwritten characters from computer but not from screen. Apply supplied keyboards have special key "←" on right side of keyboard that provides this functions without using control button.
Control J	Issues line feed only
Control V	Compliment to H^C. Forward spaces cursor and copies over written characters. Apple keyboards have "→" key on right side which also performs this function.
Control X	Immediately deletes current line.

* If BASIC program is expecting keyboard input, you will have to hit carriage return key after typing control C.

CHARACTER	DESCRIPTION OF ACTION

A_E Move cursor to right

B_E Move cursor to left

C_E Move cursor down

D_E Move cursor up

E_E Clear text from cursor to end of line

F_E Clear text from cursor to end of page

$@_E$ Home cursor to top of page, clear text to end of page.

Table A: APPLE II COLORS AS SET BY COLOR =

Note: Colors may vary depending on TV tint (hue) setting and may also
          be changed by adjusting trimmer capacitor C3 on APPLE II P.C. Board.

0 = Black		8 = Brown
1 - Magenta		9 = Orange
2 = Dark Blue		10 = Grey
3 = Light Purple		11 = Pink
4 = Dark Green		12 = Green
5 = Grey		13 = Yellow
6 = Medium Blue		14 = Blue/Green
7 = Light Blue		15 = White

Special Controls and Features

Hex	BASIC Example	Description

Display Mode Controls

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
CØ50	1Ø POKE -163Ø4,Ø	Set color graphics mode
CØ51	2Ø POKE -163Ø3,Ø	Set text mode
CØ52	3Ø POKE -163Ø2,Ø	Clear mixed graphics
CØ53	4Ø POKE -163Ø1,Ø	Set mixed graphics (4 lines text)
CØ54	5Ø POKE -163ØØ,Ø	Clear display Page 2 (BASIC commands use Page 1 only)
CØ55	6Ø POKE -16299,Ø	Set display to Page 2 (alternate)
CØ56	7Ø POKE -16298,Ø	Clear HIRES graphics mode
CØ57	8Ø POKE -16297,Ø	Set HIRES graphics mode

TEXT Mode Controls

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
ØØ2Ø	9Ø POKE 32,L1	Set left side of scrolling window to location specified by L1 in range of Ø to 39.
ØØ21	1ØØ POKE 33,W1	Set window width to amount specified by W1. L1+W1<4Ø. W1>Ø
ØØ22	11Ø POKE 34,T1	Set window top to line specified by T1 in range of Ø to 23
ØØ23	12Ø POKE 35,B1	Set window bottom to line specified by B1 in the range of Ø to 23. B1>T1
ØØ24	13Ø CH=PEEK(36) 14Ø POKE 36,CH 15Ø TAB(CH+1)	Read/set cusor horizontal position in the range of Ø to 39. If using TAB, you must add "1" to cusor position read value; Ex. 14Ø and 15Ø perform identical function.
ØØ25	16Ø CV=PEEK(37) 17Ø POKE 37,CV 18Ø VTAB(CV+1)	Similar to above. Read/set cusor vertical position in the range Ø to 23.
ØØ32	19Ø POKE 5Ø,127 2ØØ POKE 5Ø,255	Set inverse flag if 127 (Ex. 19Ø) Set normal flag if 255(Ex. 2ØØ)
FC58	21Ø CALL -936	(@E) Home cusor, clear screen
FC42	22Ø CALL -958	(FE) Clear from cusor to end of page

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
FC9C	230 CALL -868	(E_E) Clear from cusor to end of line
FC66	240 CALL -922	(J^C) Line feed
FC70	250 CALL -912	Scroll up text one line

Miscellaneous

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
C030	360 X=PEEK(-16336) 365 POKE -16336,0	Toggle speaker
C000	370 X=PEEK(-16384)	Read keyboard; if X>127 then key was pressed.
C010	380 POKE -16368,0	Clear keyboard strobe - always after reading keyboard.
C061	390 X=PEEK(16287)	Read PDL(0) push button switch. If X>127 then switch is "on".
C062	400 X=PEEK(-16286)	Read PDL(1) push button switch.
C063	410 X=PEEK(-16285)	Read PDL(2) push button switch.
C058	420 POKE -16296,0	Clear Game I/O AN0 output
C059	430 POKE -16295,0	Set Game I/O AN0 output
C05A	440 POKE -16294,0	Clear Game I/O AN1 output
C05B	450 POKE -16293,0	Set Game I/O AN1 output
C05C	460 POKE -16292,0	Clear Game I/O AN2 output
C05D	470 POKE -16291,0	Set Game I/O AN2 output
C05E	480 POKE -16290,0	Clear Game I/O AN3 output
C05F	490 POKE -16289,0	Set Game I/O AN3 output

APPLE II BASIC ERROR MESSAGES

*** SYNTAX ERR	Results from a syntactic or typing error.
*** > 32767 ERR	A value entered or calculated was less than -32767 or greater than 32767.
*** > 255 ERR	A value restricted to the range Ø to 255 was outside that range.
*** BAD BRANCH ERR	Results from an attempt to branch to a non-existant line number.
*** BAD RETURN ERR	Results from an attempt to execute more RETURNs than previously executed GOSUBs.
*** BAD NEXT ERR	Results from an attempt to execute a NEXT statement for which there was not a corresponding FOR statement.
*** 16 GOSUBS ERR	Results from more than 16 nested GOSUBs.
*** 16 FORS ERR	Results from more than 16 nested FOR loops.
*** NO END ERR	The last statement executed was not an END.
*** MEM FULL ERR	The memory needed for the program has exceeded the memory size allotted.
*** TOO LONG ERR	Results from more than 12 nested parentheses or more than 128 characters in input line.
*** DIM ERR	Results from an attempt to DIMension a string array which has been previously dimensioned.
*** RANGE ERR	An array was larger than the DIMensioned value or smaller than 1 or HLIN,VLIN, PLOT, TAB, or VTAB arguments are out of range.
*** STR OVFL ERR	The number of characters assigned to a string exceeded the DIMensioned value for that string.
*** STRING ERR	Results from an attempt to execute an illegal string operation.
RETYPE LINE	Results from illegal data being typed in response to an INPUT statement. This message also requests that the illegal item be retyped.

Simplified Memory Map

```
FFFF ┌---------┐  64K ──────────● Monitor and BASIC Routines in ROM
     │         │
     │         │
E000 │---------│  56K ──────────● Future enhancement or user supplied
     │         │                  PROMS
     │         │
     │         │
D000 │---------│  52K ──────┐
     │         │            ●──  Peripheral I/O
C000 │---------│  48K ──────┘
     │         │
     │         │
     │         │
XX   │---------│  XX ─ ─ ─ ─●  User specified RAM memory size
     │ (HIMEM:)│
     │         │       ┐
     │         │       │
     │         │       ●    User Workspace
     │         │       │
     │         │       ┘
     │         │ (LOMEM:)
7FF  │---------│  2K ──────────● Screen Memory
     │         │
400  │---------│  1K ────┐
     │         │         ●──   Internal Workspace
0    └---------┘  0 ─────┘
```

33
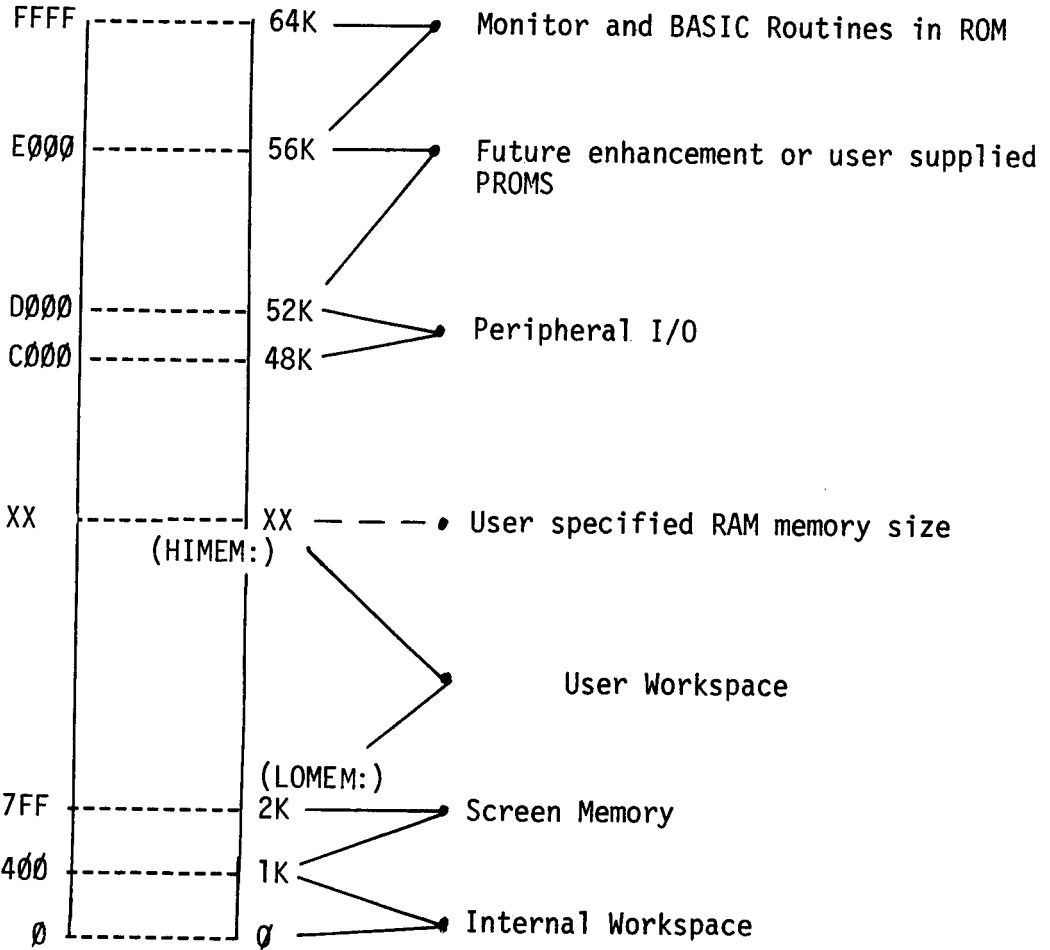
INTRODUCTION

Valuable data can be generated on the Apple II computer and sometimes it is useful to have a software routine that will allow making a permanent record of this information. This paper discusses a simple subroutine that serves this purpose.

Before discussing the Read/Save routines a rudimentary knowledge of how variables are mapped into memory is needed.

Numeric variables are mapped into memory with four attributes. Appearing in order sequentually are the Variable Name, the Display Byte, the Next Variable Address, and the Data of the Variable. Diagramatically this is represented as:

VN	DSP	NVA	DATA($\emptyset$)	DATA(1)	DATA(N)
1			h_1	h_2	h_{n+1}

VARIABLE NAME - up to 100 characters represented in memory as ASCII equivalents with the high order bit set.

DSP (DISPLAY) BYTE - set to $\emptyset$1 when DSP set in BASIC initiates a process that displays this variable with the line number every time it is changed within a program.

NVA (NEXT VARIABLE ADDRESS) - two bytes (first low order, the second high order) indicating the memory location of the next variable.

DATA - hexadecimal equivalent of numeric information, represented in pairs of bytes, low order byte first.

String variables are formatted a bit differently than numeric ones. These variables have one extra attribute - a string terminator which designates the end of a string. A string variable is formatted as follows:

VN	DSP	NVA	DATA(0)	DATA(1)	DATA(n)	ST
1			h_1	h_2	h_{n+1}	

VARIABLE NAME - up to 100 characters represented in memory as ASCII equivalents with the high order bit set.

DSP (DISPLAY) BYTE - set to 01 when DSP set in BASIC, initiates a process that displays this variable with the line number every time it is changed within a program.

NVA (NEXT VARIABLE ADDRESS) - two bytes (first low order, the second high order) indicating the memory location of the next variable.

DATA - ASCII equivalents with high order bit set.

STRING TERMINATOR (ST) - none high order bit set character indicating END of string.

There are two parts of any BASIC program represented in memory. One is the location of the variables used for the program, and the other is the actual BASIC program statements. As it turns out, the mapping of these within memory is a straightforward process. Program statements are placed into memory starting at the top of RAM memory* unless manually shifted by the "HIMEM:" command, and are pushed down as each new (numerically larger) line numbered statement is entered into the system. Figure 1a illustrates this process diagramatically. Variables on the other hand are mapped into memory starting at the lowest position of RAM memory - hex $800 (2048) unless manually shifted by the "LOMEM:" command. They are laid down from there (see Figure 1b) and continue until all the variables have been mapped into memory or until they collide with the program statements. In the event of the latter case a memory full error will be generated

---

*Top of RAM memory is a function of the amount of memory. ——
 16384 will be the value of "HIMEM:" for a 16K system.

The computer keeps track of the amount of memory used for the variable table and program statements. By placing the end memory location of each into $CC-CD(204-205) and $CA-CB(203-204), respectively. These are the BASIC memory program pointers and their values can be found by using the statements in Figure 2. CM defined in Figure 1 as the location of the end of the variable tape is equal to the number resulting from statement a of Figure 2. PP, the program pointer, is equal to the value resulting from statement 2b. These statements(Figure 2) can then be used on any Apple II computer to find the limits of the program and variable table.

FINDING THE VARIABLE TABLE FROM BASIC

First, power up the Apple II, reset it, and use the CTRL B (control B) command to place the system into BASIC initializing the memory pointers. Using the statements from Figure 2 it is found that for a 16K Apple II CM is equal to 2048 and PP is equal to 16384. These also happen to be the values of LOMEN and HIMEN: But this is expected because upon using the B^C command both memory pointers are initialized indicating no program statements and no variables.

To illustrate what a variable table looks like in Apple II memory suppose we want to assign the numeric variable A ($C1 is the ASCII equivalent of a with the high order bit set) the value of -1 (FF FF in hex) and then examine the memory contents. The steps in this process are outlined in example I. Variable A is defined as equal to -1 (step 1). Then for convenience another variable - B - is defined as equal to 0 (step 2). Now that the variable table has been defined use of statement 2a indicates that CM is equal to 2060 (step 3). LOMEN has not been readjusted so it is equal to 2048. Therefore the variable table resides in memory from 2048 ($800 hex) to 2060 ($80C). Depressing the "RESET" key places the Apple II into the monitor mode (step 4).

We are now ready to examine the memory contents of the variable table. Since the variable table resides from $800 hex to $80C hex typing in "800.80C" and then depressing the "RETURN" key (step 5) will list the memory contents of this range. Figure 3 lists the contents with each memory location labelled. Examining these contents we see that C1 is equal to the variable name and is the memory equivalent of "A" and that FF FF is the equivalent of -1. From this, since the variable name is at the beginning of the table and the data is at the end, the variable table representation of A extends from $800 to $805. We have then found

the memory range of where the variable A is mapped into memory. The reason for this will become clear in the next section.

READ/SAVE ROUTINE

The READ/SAVE subroutine has three parts. The first section (lines 0-10) defines variable A and transfers control to the main program. Lines 20 through 26 represents the Write data to tape routine and lines 30-38 represent the Read data from tape subroutine. Both READ and SAVE routines are executable by the BASIC "GOSUB X" (where X is 20 for write and 30 is for read) command. And as listed these routines can be directly incorporated into almost any BASIC program for read and saving a variable table. The limitation of these routines is that the whole part of a variable table is processed so it is necessary to maintain exactly the dimension statements for the variables used.

The variables used in this subroutine are defined as follows:

A =   record length, must be the first variable defined
CM=   the value obtained from statement a of figure 2
LM=   is equal to the value of "LOMEM:"
        Nominally 2048

SAVING A DATA TABLE

The first step in a hard copy routine is to place the desired data onto tape. This is accomplished by determining the length of the variable table and setting A equal to it. Next within the main program when it is time to write the data a GOSUB20 statement will execute the write to tape process. Record length, variable A, is written to tape first (line 22) followed by the desired data (line 24). When this process is completed control is returned to the main program.

READING A DATA TABLE

The second step is to read the data from tape. When it is time a GOSUB30 statement will initiate the read process. First, the record length is read in and checked to see if enough memory is available (line 32-34). If exactly the same dimension statements are used it is almost guaranteed that there will be enough memory available. After this the variable table is read in (line 34) and control is then returned to the main program (line 36). If not enough memory is available then an error is generated and control is returned to the main program (line 38)

EXAMPLE OF READ/SAVE USAGE

The Read/Save routines may be incorporated directly into a main program. To illustrate this a test program is listed in example 2. This program dimensions a variable array of twenty by one, fills the array with numbers, writes the data table to tape, and then reads the data from tape listing the data on the video display. To get a feeling for how to use these routines enter this program and explore how the Read/Save routines work.

CONCLUSION

Reading and Saving data in the format of a variable table is a relatively straight forward process with the Read/Save subroutine listed in figure 4. This routine will increase the flexibility of the Apple II by providing a permanent record of the data generated within a program. This program can be reprocessed. The Read/Save routines are a valuable addition to any data processing program.

```
| Var₁ | Var₂ ······· Varₙ | Unused Memory | P₁ | P₂ | P₃ ··· Pₙ₋₂ | Pₙ₋₁ | Pₙ |
```

Var_1 | $Var_2 \cdots Var_n$ | Unused Memory | P_1 | P_2 | $P_3 \cdots P_{n-2}$ | P_{n-1} | P_n

LOMEN: $800

CM End of Variable Table

PP beginning of Program

HIMEM Max System Size

b
Variable Data

a
BASIC Program
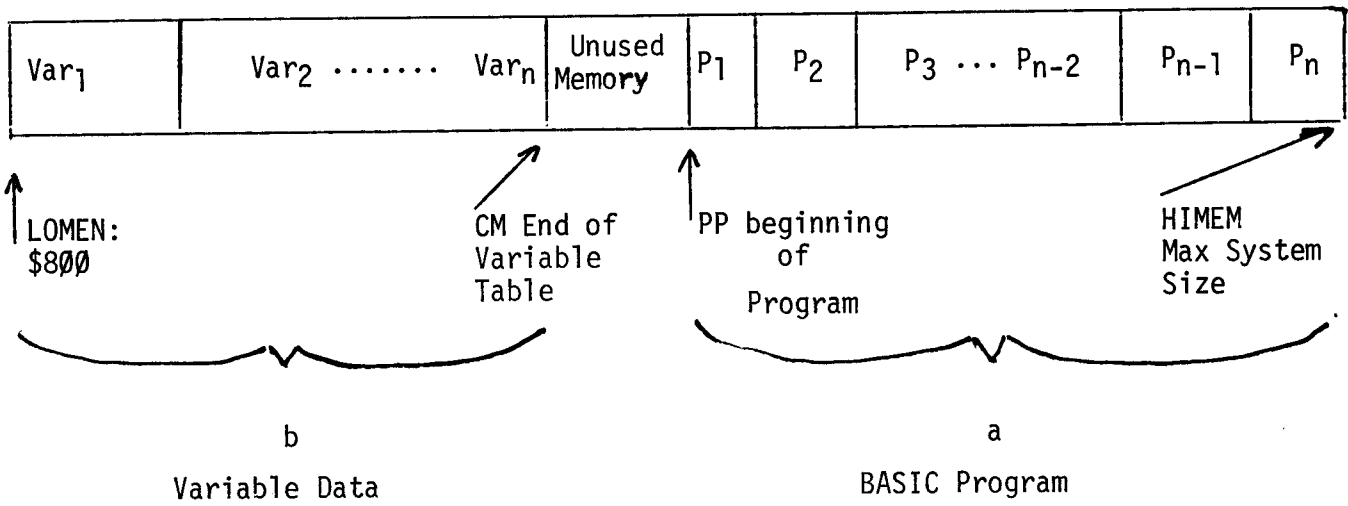
Figure 1

a)   PRINT PEEK(204) + PEEK(205)*256   → PP

b)   PRINT PEEK(202) + PEEK(203)*256   → CM

Figure 2

800	801	802	803	804	805	806	807	808	809	80A	80B	80C
C1	00	06	08	FF	FF	C2	00	0C	08	00	00	00
		L	H	L	H			L	H			
VAR	DSP	NVA		DATA		VAR	DSP	NVA		DATA		
NAM						NAM						
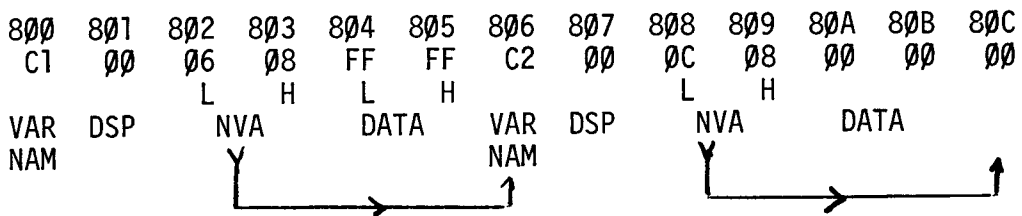
Figure 3
$800.80C rewritten with labelling

READ/SAVE PROGRAM	COMMENTS
0 A=0	This must be the first statement in the program. It is initially 0, but if data is to be saved, it will equal the length of the data base.
10 GOTO 100	This statement moves command to the main program.
20 PRINT "REWIND TAPE THEN START TAPE RECORDER": INPUT "THEN HIT RETURN", B$	Lines 20-26 are the write data to tape subroutine.
22 A=CM-LM: POKE 60,4: POKE 61,8: POKE 62,5: POKE 63,8: CALL -307	
24 POKE 60,LM MOD 256: POKE 61, LM/256: POKE 62, CM MOD 256: POKE 63, CM/256: CALL -307	Writing data table to tape
26 PRINT "DATA TABLE SAVED": RETURN	Returning control to main program.
30 PRINT "REWIND THE TAPE THEN START TAPE RECORDER": INPUT "AND HIT RETURN", B$	Lines 30-38 are the READ data from tape subroutine.
32 POKE 60,4: POKE 61,8: POKE 62,5: POKE 63,8: CALL -259	
34 IF A<0 THEN 38: P=LM+A: IF P>HM THEN 38: CM=P: POKE 60, LM MOD 256: POKE 61, LM/256: POKE 62, CM MOD 256: POKE 63, CM/256: CALL -259	Checking the record length (A) for memory requirements if everything is satisfactory the data is READ in.
36 PRINT "DATA READ IN": RETURN	
38 PRINT "***TOO MUCH DATA BASE***": RETURN	Returning control to main program.

NOTE: CM, LM and A must be defined within the main program.

1	>A=1 >	Define variable A=-1, then hit RETURN
2	>B=Ø >	Define variable B=Ø, then hit RETURN

3	>PRINT PEEK (204) + PEEK
	  (205) * 256
	
	  computer responds with=
	  2Ø6Ø
		Use statement 2a to find the end of
		the VARIABLE TABLE

4	> *	Hit the RESET key, Apple moves into Monitor mode.
5	*8ØØ.8ØC	Type in VARIABLE TABLE RANGE and HIT the RETURN KEY.

Computer responds with:

Ø8ØØ- C1 ØØ 86 Ø8 FF FF C2 ØØ

Ø8Ø8 ØC Ø8 ØØ ØØ ØØ

Example 1

41

Example 2

```
>LIST

   0 A=0
  10 GOTO 100
  20 REM   WRITE DATA TO TAPE ROUTINE
  22 A=CM-LM: POKE 60,4: POKE 61
     ,8: POKE 62,5: POKE 63,8: CALL
     -307
  24 POKE 60,LM MOD 256: POKE 61
     ,LM/256: POKE 62,CM MOD 256
     : POKE 63,CM/256: CALL -307

  26 RETURN
  30 REM   READ DATA SUBROUTINE
  32 POKE 60,4: POKE 61,8: POKE
     62,5: POKE 63,8: CALL -259
  34 IF A<0 THEN 38:P=LM+A: IF P>
     HM THEN 38:CM=P: POKE 60,LM MOD
     256: POKE 61,LM/256: POKE 62
     ,CM MOD 256: POKE 63,CM/256
     : CALL -259
  36 RETURN
  38 PRINT "*** TOO MUCH DATA BASE **
     *": END
 100 DIM A$(1),X(20)
 105 FOR I=1 TO 20:X(I)=I: NEXT
     I
 108 LM=2048:CM=2106:A=58:HM=16383

 110 PRINT "20 NUMBERS GENERATED"

 120 PRINT "NOW WE ARE GOING TO SAVE
     THE DATA": PRINT "WHEN YOU ARE R
     EADY START THE RECORDER IN RECOR
     D MODE": INPUT "AND HIT RETURN"
     ,A$
 130 CALL -936: PRINT "NOW WRITING DA
     TA TO TAPE": GOSUB 20
 135 PRINT "NOW THE DATA IS SAVED"

 140 PRINT "NOW WE ARE GOING TO CLEAR
     THE X(20) TABLE AND READ THE DA
     TA FROM TAPE"
 150 FOR I=1 TO 20:X(I)=0: PRINT
     "X(";I;")= ";X(I): NEXT I
 160 PRINT "NOW START TAPE RECORDER"
     : INPUT "AND THEN HIT RETURN"
     ,A$
 165 PRINT "A ",A
 170 GOSUB 30
 180 PRINT "ALL THE DATA READ IN"

 190 FOR I=1 TO 20: PRINT "X(";I;
     ")= ";X(I): NEXT I
 195 PRINT "THIS IS THE END"
 200 END
```

A SIMPLE TONE SUBROUTINE

INTRODUCTION

Computers can perform marvelous feats of mathematical computation at well beyond the speed capable of most human minds. They are fast, cold and accurate; man on the other hand is slower, has emotion, and makes errors. These differences create problems when the two interact with one another. So to reduce this problem humanizing of the computer is needed. Humanizing means incorporating within the computer procedures that aid in a program's usage. One such technique is the addition of a tone subroutine. This paper discusses the incorporation and usage of a tone subroutine within the Apple II computer.

Tone Generation

To generate tones in a computer three things are needed: a speaker, a circuit to drive the speaker, and a means of triggering the circuit. As it happens the Apple II computer was designed with a two-inch speaker and an efficient speaker driving circuit. Control of the speaker is accomplished through software.

Toggling the speaker is a simple process, a mere PEEK - 16336 ($C030) in BASIC statement will perform this operation. This does not, however, produce tones, it only emits clicks. Generation of tones is the goal, so describing frequency and duration is needed. This is accomplished by toggling the speaker at regular intervals for a fixed period of time. Figure 1 lists a machine language routine that satisfies these requirements.

Machine Language Program

This machine language program resides in page 0 of memory from $02 (2) to $14 (20). $00 (00) is used to store the relative period (P) between toggling of the speaker and $01 (01) is used as the memory location for the value of relative duration (D). Both P and D can range in value from $00 (0) to $FF (255). After the values for frequency and duration are placed into memory a CALL2 statement from BASIC will activate this routine. The speaker is toggled with the machine language statement residing at $02 and then a

delay in time equal to the value in $ØØ occurs. This process is repeated until the tone has lasted a relative period of time equal to the duration (value in $Ø1) and then this program is exited (statement $14).

Basic Program

The purpose of the machine language routine is to generate tones controllable from BASIC as the program dictates. Figure 2 lists the appropriate statement that will deposit the machine language routine into memory. They are in the form of a subroutine and can be activated by a GOSUB 32ØØØ statement. It is only necessary to use this statement once at the beginning of a program. After that the machine language program will remain in memory unless a later part of the main program modifies the first 2Ø locations of page Ø.

After the GOSUB 32ØØØ has placed the machine language program into memory it may be activated by the statement in Figure 3. This statement is also in the form of a GOSUB because it can be used repetitively in a program. Once the frequency and duration have been defined by setting P and D equal to a value between Ø and 255 a GOSUB 25 statement is used to initiate the generation of a tone. The values of P and D are placed into $ØØ and $Ø1 and the CALL2 command activates the machine language program that toggles the speaker. After the tone has ended control is returned to the main program.

The statements in Figures 2 and 3 can be directly incorporated into BASIC programs to provide for the generation of tones. Once added to a program an infinite variety of tone combinations can be produced. For example, tones can be used to prompt, indicate an error in entering or answering questions, and supplement video displays on the Apple II computer system.

Since the computer operates at a faster rate than man does, prompting can be used to indicate when the computer expects data to be entered. Tones can be generated at just about any time for any reason in a program. The programmer's imagination can guide the placement of these tones.

CONCLUSION

The incorporation of tones through the routines discussed in this paper will aid in the humanizing of software used in the Apple computer. These routines can also help in transforming a dull program into a lively one. They are relatively easy to use and are a valuable addition to any program.

```
0000-    FF                ???
0001-    FF                ???
0002-    AD 30 C0          LDA     $C030
0005-    88                DEY
0006-    D0 04             BNE     $000C
0008-    C6 01             DEC     $01
000A-    F0 08             BEQ     $0014
000C-    CA                DEX
000D-    D0 F6             BNE     $0005
000F-    A6 00             LDX     $00
0011-    4C 02 00          JMP     $0002
0014-    60                RTS
```

FIGURE 1. Machine Language Program
adapted from a program by P. Lutas.

```
32000 POKE 2,173: POKE 3,48: POKE
      4,192: POKE 5,136: POKE 6,208
      : POKE 7,4: POKE 8,198: POKE
      9,1: POKE 10,240
32005 POKE 11,8: POKE 12,202: POKE
      13,208: POKE 14,246: POKE 15
      ,166: POKE 16,0: POKE 17,76
      : POKE 18,2: POKE 19,0: POKE
      20,96: RETURN
```

FIGURE 2.   BASIC "POKES"

```
25 POKE 0,P: POKE 1,D: CALL 2:
   RETURN
```

FIGURE 3.   GOSUB

High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

These subroutines were created to make programming for High-Resolution Graphics easier, for both BASIC and machine language programs. These subroutines occupy 757 bytes of memory and are available on either cassette tape or Read-Only Memory (ROM). This note describes use and care of these subroutines.

There are seven subroutines in this package. With these, a programmer can initialize High-Resolution mode, clear the screen, plot a point, draw a line, or draw and animate a predefined shape. on the screen. There are also some other general-purpose subroutines to shorten and simplify programming.

BASIC programs can access these subroutines by use of the CALL statement, and can pass information by using the POKE statement. There are special entry points for most of the subroutines that will perform the same functions as the original subroutines without modifying any BASIC pointers or registers. For machine language programming, a JSR to the appropriate subroutine address will perform the same function as a BASIC CALL.

In the following subroutine descriptions, all addresses given will be in decimal. The hexadecimal substitutes will be preceded by a dollar sign ($). All entry points given are for the cassette tape subroutines, which load into addresses C00 to FFF (hex). Equivalent addresses for the ROM subroutines will be in *italic type face*.

High-Resolution Operating Subroutines

__INIT__   Initializes High-Resolution Graphics mode.

  From BASIC: CALL 3072 *(or CALL -12288)*

  From machine language: JSR $C00 *(or JSR $D000)*

     This subroutine sets High-Resolution Graphics mode with a
280 x 160 matrix of dots in the top portion of the screen and
four lines of text in the bottom portion of the screen. INIT
also clears the screen.

__CLEAR__   Clears the screen.

  From BASIC: CALL 3086 *(or CALL -12274)*

  From machine language: JSR $C0E *(or JSR $D00E)*

     This subroutine clears the High-Resolution screen without
resetting the High-Resolution Graphics mode.

__PLOT__   Plots a point on the screen.

  From BASIC: CALL 3780 *(or CALL -11580)*

  From machine language: JSR $C7C *(or JSR $D07C)*

     This subroutine plots a single point on the screen. The
X and Y coodinates of the point are passed in locations 800,
801, and 802 from BASIC, or in the A, X, and Y registers from
machine language. The Y (vertical) coordinate can be from 0

PLOT (continued)

(top of screen) to 159 (bottom of screen) and is passed in
location 802 or the A-register; but the X (horizontal) coordinate
can range from 0 (left side of screen) to 279 (right side of screen)
and must be split between locations 800 (X MOD 256) and 801
(X/256).or, from machine language, between registers X (X LO)
and Y (X HI). The color of the point to be plotted must be set
in location 812 ($32C). Four colors are possible: 0 is BLACK,
85 ($55) is GREEN, 170 ($AA) is VIOLET, and 255 ($FF) is WHITE.

POSN   Positions a point on the screen.

From BASIC: CALL 3761 *(or CALL -11599]*

From machine language: JSR $C26 *(or JSR $D026)*

This subroutine does all calculations for a PLOT, but does
not plot a point (it leaves the screen unchanged). This is useful
when used in conjumction with LINE or SHAPE (described later).
To use this subroutine, set up the X and Y coordinates just the
same as for PLOT. The color in location 812 ($32C) is ignored.

LINE   Draw a line on the screen.

LINE   Draws a line on the screen.

  From BASIC: CALL 3786 *(or CALL -11574)*

  From machine language: JSR $C95 *(or JSR $D095)*

This subroutine draws a line from the last point PLOTted or POSN'ed to the point specified. One endpoint is the last point PLOTted or POSN'ed; the other endpoint is passed in the same manner as for a PLOT or POSN. The color of the line is set in location 812 ($32C). After the line is drawn, the new endpoint becomes the base endpoint for the next line drawn.

SHAPE   Draws a predefined shape on the screen.

  From BASIC: CALL 3805 *(or CALL -11555)*

  From machine language: JSR $DBC *(or JSR $D1BC)*

This subroutine draws a predefined shape on the screen at the point previously PLOTted or POSN'ed. The shape is defined by a *table..of vectors* in memory.(How to create a vector table will be described later). The starting address of this table should be passed in locations 804 and 805 from BASIC or in the Y and X registers from machine language. The color of the shape should be passed in location 28 ($1C).

There are two special variables that are used only with shapes: the scaling factor and the rotation factor. The scaling factor determines the relative size of the shape. A scaling factor of

SHAPE (continued)

1 will cause the shape to be drawn true size, while a scaling factor of 2 will draw the shape double size, etc. The scaling factor is passed in location 8Ø6 from BASIC or $32F from machine language. The rotation factor specifies one of 64 possible angles of rotation for the shape. A rotation factor of Ø will cause the shape to be drawn right-side up, where a rotation factor if 16 will draw the shape rotated 90° clockwise, etc. The rotation factor is passed in location 8Ø7 foom BASIC of in the A-register from machine language.

The table of vectors which defines the shape to be drawn is a series of bytes stored in memory. Each byte is divided into three sections, and each section specifies whether or not to plot a point and also a direction to move (up, down, left, or right). The SHAPE subroutine steps through the vector table byte by byte, and then through each byte section by section. When it reaches a ØØ byte, it is finished.

The three sections are arranged in a byte like this:
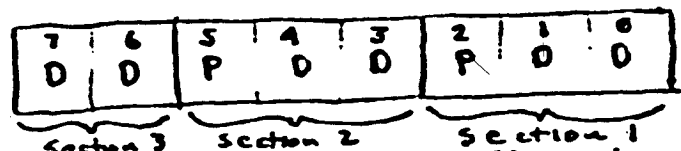
Each bit pair DD specifies a direction to move, and the two bits P specify whether or not to plot a point before moving. Notice that the last section (most significant bits) does not have a P field, so it can only be a move without plotting. The SHAPE

SHAPE (continued)

subroutine processes the sections from right to left (least significant bit to most significant bit). IF THE REMAINING SECTIONS OF THE BYTE ARE ZERO, THEN THEY ARE IGNORED. Thus, the byte cannot end with sections of ØØ (move up without plotting).

Here is an example of how to create a vector table:

Suppose we want to draw a shape like this:
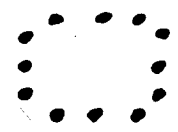
First, draw it on graph paper, one dot per square. Then decide where to start drawing the shape. Let's start this one in the center. Next, we must draw a path through each point in the shape, using only 90° angles on the turns:

Next, re-draw the shape as a series of vectors, each one moving one place up, down, left, or right, and distinguish the vectors that plot a point before moving:

Now "unwrap" those vectors and write them in a straight line.

↓ ↓ ↤ ↤ ↑ ↟ ↟ ↟ → ↦ → ↦ ↓ ↡ ↡ ↡ ↤ ↤
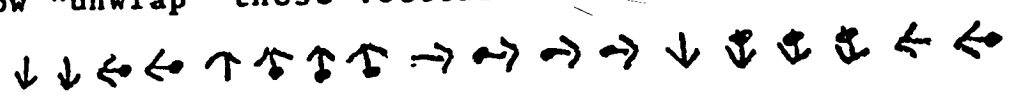
Now draw a table like the one in Figure 1. For each vector in the line, figure the bit code and place it in the next available section in the table. If it will not fit or is a ØØ at the end of a byte, then skip that section and go on to the next. When you have finished

SHAPE (continued)

coding all vectors, check your work to make sure it is accurate. Then make another table (as in figure 2) and re-copy the coded vectors from the first table. Then decode the vector information into a series of hexadecimal bytes, using the hexidecimal code table in figure 3. This series of hexidecimal bytes is your shape definition table, which you can now put into the Apple II's memory and use to draw that shape on the screen.

Shape vectors: ↓↓←↜←↑↑↥↑→↝→↝↓↓↓↓←↜

Figure 1

C B A columns (rows 0–9):

C column:
Row	C
0	
1	
2	
3	0 1
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	0 0

B column:
Row	B
0	0 1 0
1	1 1 1
2	1 0 0
3	1 0 0
4	1 0 1
5	0 1 0
6	1 1 0
7	0 1 1
8	0 0 0
9	0 0 0

A column:
Row	A
0	0 1 0
1	1 1 1
2	0 0 0
3	1 0 0
4	1 0 1
5	1 0 1
6	1 1 0
7	1 1 0
8	1 1 1
9	0 0 0

C B A (arrows): START HERE
Row	arrows
0	↓ ↓
1	← ←
2	↑ ↑
3	→ ↥ ↑
4	→→
5	↓ →
6	↓ ↓
7	← ↓
8	←

← Empty

↳ This vector cannot be
a plot vector
or a Move Up (↑)

CODES

↑	0 0 0	or	0 0
→	0 0 1		0 1
↓	0 1 0		1 0
←	0 1 1		1 1
↑	1 0 0		
→	1 0 1		
↓	1 1 0		
←	1 1 1		

Figure 1.

Figure 2

C | B | A (rows 0–9):

Row	C B	A	=	Hex
0	0 0 0 1	0 0 1 0	=	1 2
1	0 0 1 1	1 1 1 1		3 F
2	0 0 1 0	0 0 0 0		2 0
3	0 1 1 0	0 1 0 0		6 4
4	0 0 1 0	1 1 0 1		2 D
5	0 0 0 1	0 1 0 1		1 5
6	0 0 1 1	0 1 1 0		3 6
7	0 0 0 1	1 1 1 0		1 E
8	0 0 0 0	0 1 1 1		0 7
9	0 0 0 0	0 0 0 0		0 0

← Empty denotes end of vector table.

Figure 2.

Hex-decimal Codes

Binary		Hex
0 0 0 0	→	0
0 0 0 1	→	1
0 0 1 0	→	2
0 0 1 1	→	3
0 1 0 0	→	4
0 1 0 1	→	5
0 1 1 0	→	6
0 1 1 1	→	7
1 0 0 0	→	8
1 0 0 1	→	9
1 0 1 0	→	A
1 0 1 1	→	B
1 1 0 0	→	C
1 1 0 1	→	D
1 1 1 0	→	E
1 1 1 1	→	F

```
>REM HIRES DEMO-BASIC LISTING

>LIST

   1 INIT=3072:CLEAR=3086:POSN=3761
     :PLOT=3780:LINE=3786:SHAPE=
     3805:FIND=3667:SINTBL=3840

   5 DIM X(10),Y(10)

  10 TEXT : CALL -936: VTAB 4: TAB
     10: PRINT "*** 16K APPLE II ***"
     : PRINT " *** HIGH RESOLUTION G
     RAPHICS DEMOS ***": PRINT

  15 PRINT "1 RANDOM LINE DRAW AT BAS
     IC SPEED": PRINT "2 RANDOM SHAPE
      PROJECTED INTO CORNER"

  20 PRINT "3 CHRIS' MAD FOLLY":
      PRINT "4 RANDOM SHAPE SPIRALING
      INTO POINT": PRINT "5 SPIROGRAP
     H"

  25 PRINT "6 HI-RES DONUT": PRINT
     "7 RANDOM WAVE FORM": PRINT
     "8 SUM OF TWO SINE WAVES"

  30 PRINT : PRINT "HIT ANY KEY FOR N
     EW DEMO": PRINT "TYPE 'CONTROL C
     ' ; RETURN BUTTON THEN   TYPE 'T
     EXT AND RETURN BUTTON TO STOP"

  50 PRINT : INPUT "WHICH DEMO # DO Y
     OU WANT ",X1

  90 IF X1<1 OR X1>8 THEN 10: CALL
     INIT: GOTO 100*X1

 100 CALL INIT:X=40:Y=X: GOSUB 2000
     : POKE 812,255: CALL PLOT

 110 X= RND (280):Y= RND (160): GOSUB
     2000: CALL LINE: IF NOT RND
     (300) THEN POKE 23,( PEEK (
     28)+ RND (3)+1) MOD 4*85: GOSUB·
     3000: GOTO 110

 200 GOSUB 1000:X= RND (2)*279:Y=
     RND (2)*159: CALL PLOT: FOR
     J=1 TO 30: FOR I=1 TO R: POKE
     800,X(I) MOD 256: POKE 801,
     X(I))255: POKE 802,Y(I): CALL
     LINE

 530 IF RND (500)<C THEN POKE 28
     , RND (4)*85:Y=Y+YDIR*B: IF
     Y>=0 AND Y<160 THEN 510:YDIR=
     -YDIR:Y=-Y: IF Y<0 THEN Y=Y+
     318: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 510

 600 POKE -16302,0: POKE 768,5: POKE
     769,0: POKE 800,140: POKE 801
     ,0: POKE 802,0: POKE 804,0:
      POKE 805,3: POKE 812,255: CALL
     POSN

 610 FOR R=0 TO 4160: POKE 807,R MOD
     64: POKE 806,2+6* NOT (R MOD
     65): CALL SHAPE: NEXT R: GOSUB
     3000: GOTO 610

 700 J= RND (10)+ RND (10):K= RND
     (33)+ RND (31)+ RND (60):L=
     RND (9)/8: PRINT "FREQ#1= "
     ;J;" FREQ#2= ";K

 710 GOSUB 4000: GOSUB 3000: GOTO
     700

 800 INPUT "REL FREQ #1=",J: INPUT
     "REL FREQ #2=",K: INPUT "MODE (0
     =SOLID, 1=POINTS)",L

 810 GOSUB 4000: GOSUB 3000: GOTO
     800

1000 CALL CLEAR: POKE 812, RND (
     3)*85+85:R= RND (3)+2+ RND
     (2): FOR I=1 TO R:X(I)= RND
     (160):Y(I)= RND (160): NEXT
     I

1010 X=X(1):Y=Y(1): GOSUB 2000: RETURN

2000 POKE 800,X MOD 256: POKE 801
     ,X)255: POKE 802,Y: RETURN


3000 IF PEEK (-16384)<128 THEN RETURN
     : POKE -16368,0: POP : GOTO
     10

4000 CALL INIT: POKE 812,255:A=0
     :B=0: FOR I=0 TO 279:A=(A+J)
     MOD 256:B=(B+K) MOD 256:Y=
     ( PEEK (SINTBL+A)+ PEEK (SINTBL+
     B))*5/16

4010 POKE 800,I MOD 256: POKE 801
     ,I)255: POKE 802,Y: CALL LINE-
     6*( NOT I OR L): NEXT I: RETURN

 210 X(I)=(X(I)-X)*9/10+X:Y(I)=(
     Y(I)-Y)*9/10+Y: NEXT I,J: GOSUB
     3000: GOTO 200

 300 CALL INIT:X= RND (24)*10+20
     :Y= RND (14)*10+20: POKE 812
     , RND (3)*85+85: GOSUB 2000
     : CALL PLOT

 310 IF RND (1000)<1 THEN 300: IF
     NOT RND (200) THEN POKE 28,
     RND (4)*85

 320 X1=X+( RND (3)-1)*25:Y1=Y+(
     RND (3)-1)*15: IF X1<0 OR
     X1>279 OR Y1<0 OR Y1>159 THEN
     320

 330 X=X1:Y=Y1: GOSUB 2000: CALL
     LINE: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 310

 400 GOSUB 1000: POKE 812, RND (
     3)*85+85: CALL PLOT

 410 FOR J=1 TO 25: FOR I=1 TO R:
     POKE 800,X(I) MOD 255: POKE
     801,X)255: POKE 802,Y(I): CALL
     LINE

 420 X=(X(I)-80+(Y(I)-80)/8)*9/10
     +80:Y(I)=(Y(I)-80-(X(I)-80)
     /8)*9/10+80:X(I)=X: NEXT I,
     J: GOSUB 3000: GOTO 400

 500 CALL INIT: POKE 800,0: CALL
     PLOT:X=0:Y=0:XDIR=1:YDIR=1:
     A=5:B=3:C=0

 510 POKE 800,0: POKE 801,0: POKE
     802,Y: CALL LINE: POKE 800,
     (279-X) MOD 256: POKE 801,X(
     24: POKE 802,159: CALL LINE:
      POKE 800,23: POKE 801,1: POKE
     802,159-Y: CALL LINE

 515 IF RND (500) THEN 520:A=1+ RND
     (13):B=2+ RND (8):C=4+ RND
     (7)

 520 POKE 800,X MOD 256: POKE 801
     ,X)255: POKE 802,0: CALL LINE:
     X=X+XDIR*A: IF X>=0 AND X<280
     THEN 530:XDIR=-XDIR:X=-X: IF
     X<0 THEN X=X+558
```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

ROD'S COLOR PATTERN is a simple but eloquent program. It generates a continuous flow of colored mosaic-like patterns in a 40 high by 40 wide block matrix. Many of the patterns generated by this program are pleasing to the eye and will dazzle the mind for minutes at a time.

REQUIREMENTS

4K or greater Apple II system with a color video display.
BASIC is the programming language used.

PROGRAM LISTING

```
100 GR
105 FOR W=3 TO 50
110 FOR I=1 TO 19
115 FOR J=0 TO 19
120 K=I+J
130 COLOR=J*3/(I+3)+I*W/12
135 PLOT I,K: PLOT K,I: PLOT 40
    -I,40-K
136 PLOT 40-K,40-I: PLOT K,40-I:
    PLOT 40-I,K: PLOT I,40-K: PLOT
    40-K,I
140 NEXT J,I
145 NEXT W: GOTO 105
```

```
5 REM   PONG BY WENDELL BITTER
10 REM        7/7/77
15 REM   PADDLE SWITCHES CONTROL
         PADDLE SIZE AFTER A MISS
         OR DURING A HIT
20 GR
25 DIM P(3): DIM HP$(10)
30 A=38:B=1:C=-1
35 COLOR=13: HLIN 1,38 AT 0: HLIN
   1,38 AT 39
40 CALL -936: VTAB 23: INPUT "HANDB
   ALL OR PONG ? ",HP$
45 INPUT "PADDLE SIZE (1-6) ",
   PS: IF PS<1 OR PS>6 THEN 45
   :S=PS-1
50 CALL -936
55 IF HP$(1)#"H" THEN 205
60 H=1: COLOR=13: VLIN 0,39 AT
   39: GOTO 205
65 FOR X=A TO B STEP C
70 Y=YY+V: IF Y>1 AND Y<38 THEN
   80: IF Y<1 THEN Y=1: IF Y>38
   THEN Y=38
75 V=-V: FOR T=1 TO 5:N= PEEK
   (-16336): NEXT T
80 IF X=C OR X=39+C THEN 85: COLOR=
   0: PLOT X-C,YY: COLOR=15: PLOT
   X,Y
85 YY=Y: IF X MOD 2=0 THEN GOSUB
   235: NEXT X
90 GOSUB 235
95 IF SCRN(X,Y+V*(Y+V(40 AND Y+
   V)-1))=0 THEN 165
100 FOR T=1 TO 10:N= PEEK (-16336
    ): NEXT T
105 IF H AND C>0 THEN 130
110 PP=P(X/39)
115 IF Y=PP THEN V=3: IF Y=PP+1
    THEN V=2: IF Y=PP+2 THEN V=
    1
120 IF Y=PP+3 THEN V=-1: IF Y=PP+
    4 THEN V=-2: IF Y=PP+5 THEN
    V=-3
125 IF S=0 THEN V=3- RND (7)
130 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
135 IF (H AND C>0) OR (VYO= ABS
    (V) AND X=0) THEN V=4- RND
    (9)
140 IF X=0 THEN VYO= ABS (V)
145 A=39-A:B=39-B:C=-C
150 IF PEEK (-16286)>127 AND S#
    5 THEN S=S+1
155 IF PEEK (-16287)>127 AND S#
    0 THEN S=S-1
160 GOTO 65
165 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
170 COLOR=15: PLOT X,Y+V*(Y+V,-
    1 AND Y+V(40)
175 FOR T=1 TO 75:N= PEEK (-16336
    )+ PEEK (-16336)- PEEK (-16336
    ): NEXT T
180 IF X=0 THEN SR=SR+1: IF X=39
    THEN SL=SL+1
185 VTAB 23: TAB 7: PRINT SL;: TAB
    33: PRINT SR
190 COLOR=0: PLOT X-C,Y
195 IF SL=15 OR SR=15 THEN 260
200 COLOR=0: PLOT X,Y+V*(Y+V)-1
    AND Y+YY(40)
205 FOR T=1 TO 75: IF T MOD 5#0
    THEN 210: IF PEEK (-16286)
    )127 AND S#5 THEN S=S+1: IF
    PEEK (-16287))127 AND S#0 THEN
    S=S-1
210 GOSUB 235: NEXT T
215 YY=P(0): IF X=0 THEN YY=P(1
    )
220 IF H THEN YY= RND (37)+1
225 V=1- RND (3)
230 GOTO 65
235 IF H THEN 245:P(1)=(( PDL (
    1)-24)*20)/115: IF P(1)=P(3
    ) THEN 245: IF P(1)<0 THEN
    P(1)=0: IF P(1)+5)39 THEN P(
    1)=39-S
240 COLOR=6: VLIN P(1),P(1)+5 AT
    39: COLOR=0: IF P(1)P(3) THEN
    VLIN 0,P(1)-1 AT 39: IF P(1
    )<P(3) THEN VLIN P(1)+5+1,39
    AT 39:P(3)=P(1)
245 P(0)=(( PDL (0)-24)*20)/145
    : IF P(0)<0 THEN P(0)=0: IF
    P(0)=P(2) THEN RETURN : IF
    P(0)+S)39 THEN P(0)=39-S
250 COLOR=6: VLIN P(0),P(0)+5 AT
    0: COLOR=0: IF P(0))P(2) THEN
    VLIN 0,P(0)-1 AT 0: IF P(0)
    (P(2) THEN VLIN P(0)+5+1,39
    AT 0
255 COLOR=0: IF P(0))P(2) THEN
    VLIN 0,P(0)-1 AT 0: IF P(0)
    (P(2) THEN VLIN P(0)+5+1,39
    AT 0:P(2)=P(0): RETURN
260 PRINT "": END
265 END
```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

Color Sketch is a little program that transforms the Apple II into an artist's easel, the screen into a sketch pad. The user as an artist has a 40 high by 40 wide (1600 blocks) sketching pad to fill with a rainbow of fifteen colors. Placement of colors is determined by controlling paddle inputs; one for the horizontal and the other for the vertical. Colors are selected by depressing a letter from A through P on the keyboard.

An enormous number of distinct pictures can be drawn on the sketch pad and this program will provide many hours of visual entertainment.

REQUIREMENTS

This program will fit into a 4K system in the BASIC mode.

```
5 POKE 2,173: POKE 3,48: POKE
  4,192: POKE 5,165: POKE 6,0
  : POKE 7,32: POKE 8,168: POKE
  9,252: POKE 10,165: POKE 11
  ,1: POKE 12,200: POKE 13,4
10 POKE 14,198: POKE 15,24: POKE
  16,240: POKE 17,5: POKE 18,
  198: POKE 19,1: POKE 20,76:
  POKE 21,2: POKE 22,0: POKE
  23,96
15 DIM B$(40): TEXT : CALL -936
  : GOTO 90
20 CALL -936: GOTO 90
25 A= LEN(B$): FOR Z=1 TO A: GOSUB
  65: PRINT B$(Z,Z);: NEXT Z:
  GOSUB 70: RETURN
30 B$="******************************
  ************": RETURN
35 B$="COLOR SKETCH": RETURN
40 B$="COPYRIGHT APPLE COMPUTER 197
  7": RETURN
45 B$="THIS PROGRAM ALLOWS YOU TO "
  : RETURN
50 B$="SKETCH COLORED FIGURES IN"
  : RETURN
55 B$="LOW RESOLUTION GRAPHICS WITH
  PADDLES": RETURN
60 KK=20:TON=20: GOSUB 85: RETURN

65 KK=10:TON=10: GOSUB 85: RETURN

70 KK=20:TON=50: GOSUB 85:KK=30
  :TON=90: GOSUB 85: RETURN
75 KK=20:TON=20: GOSUB 85: RETURN

80 KK=8:TON=250: GOSUB 85:KK=9
  :TON=250: GOSUB 85: RETURN

85 POKE 1,TON MOD 256: POKE 24
  ,TON/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL
  2: RETURN
90 GOSUB 30: GOSUB 25: PRINT :
  TAB 13: GOSUB 35: GOSUB 25
  : PRINT : GOSUB 30: GOSUB 25
  : PRINT : TAB 5: GOSUB 40: GOSUB
  25: PRINT : GOSUB 30: GOSUB
  25
95 PRINT : GOSUB 70: GOSUB 45:
  GOSUB 25: PRINT : GOSUB 50
  : GOSUB 25: PRINT : GOSUB 55
  : GOSUB 25: PRINT
100 PRINT : PRINT : GOSUB 70: INPUT
  "WHEN READY HIT RETURN",B$
105 GR
110 B$="ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOP": CALL
  -936
115 FOR Z=0 TO 15: COLOR=Z: PLOT
  Z*2+4,39: VTAB 21: GOSUB 75
  : TAB Z*2+5: PRINT B$(Z+1,Z+
  1);: GOSUB 75: NEXT Z: TAB
  1
120 VTAB 22:B$="TYPE A LETTER TO  CH
  ANGE COLOR.": GOSUB 25: PRINT
  ;B$="TYPE SPACE BAR TO STOP PLOT
  .": GOSUB 25: PRINT
125 Y= PDL (1)*38/255:X= PDL (0
  )*39/255: VTAB 24: TAB 1: PRINT
  "CURSOR POSITION: X=";X;"   Y="
  ;Y;"   ";;
130 IF PEEK (-16384))127 THEN 145
  : IF X1=X AND Y1=Y THEN 125
  : COLOR=C2: PLOT X1,Y1: IF
  NOT FLAG THEN 135: COLOR=C:
  PLOT X,Y

135 C2= SCRN(X,Y):C3=15: IF C2=
  15 THEN C3=5: COLOR=C3: PLOT
  X,Y:X1=X:Y1=Y
140 GOTO 125
145 IF PEEK (-16384)#160 THEN 155
  :FLAG=0: POKE -16368,0: POKE
  34,20: COLOR=0: HLIN 0,39 AT
  39: CALL -936
150 PRINT :B$="CONTINUE OR STOP"
  : VTAB 24: GOSUB 25: INPUT
  " (C/S) ",B$: IF B$(1,1)="C"
  THEN 110: PRINT "END": END

155 FLAG=1:C= PEEK (-16384)-193
  : POKE -16368,0: GOTO 125
```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

MASTERMIND is a game of strategy that matches your wits against Apple's. The object of the game is to choose correctly which 5 colored bars have been secretly chosen by the computer. Eight different colors are possible for each bar - Red (R), Yellow (Y), Violet (V), Orange (O), White (W), and Black (B). A color may be used more than once. Guesses for a turn are made by selecting a color for each of the five hidden bars. After hitting the RETURN key Apple will indicate the correctness of the turn. Each white square to the right of your turn indicates a correctly colored and positioned bar. Each grey square acknowledges a correctly colored but improperly positioned bar. No squares indicate you're way off.

Test your skill and challenge the Apple II to a game of MASTERMIND.

REQUIREMENTS

8K or greater Apple II computer system.
BASIC is the programming language.

PROGRAM LISTING: MASTERMIND

```
0 REM GAME OF MASTERMIND  8-25-77
  WOZ (APPLE COMPUTER)
10 DIM A(6),C(8),D(5),X(8),X$(
   8):X(1)=2:X(2)=12:X(3)=1:X(
   4)=13:X(5)=3:X(6)=9:X(7)=15
   :X(8)=5:X$="BGRYVOWX"
20 TEXT : CALL -936: PRINT "


WELCO
     ME TO THE GAME OF MASTERMIND!


     YOUR OBJECT IS TO GUESS 5 COLOR
  S (WHICH"
30 PRINT "I WILL MAKE UP) IN THE MI
   NIMUM NUMBER  OF GUESSES.  THER
   E ARE EIGHT DIFFERENT  COLORS TO
   CHOSE FROM."
40 PRINT "


FEWER THAN 7 GUESSES--EXC
     ELLENT": PRINT "  7 TO 9 GUESSE
  S-----GOOD": PRINT " 10 TO 14 G
  UESSES----AVERAGE"
50 PRINT "MORE THAN 14 GUESSES--POO
   R


": CALL -384: TAB 7: PRINT
     "HIT ANY KEY TO BEGIN PLAY"

100 CALL -380: IF PEEK (-16384)
    <132 THEN 100: POKE -16368,
    0: GR : PRINT : FOR I=1 TO
    8:C(I)= RND (8)+1: COLOR=X(
    I): HLIN I*4-2,I*4 AT 39: PRINT
    "  ";X$(I,I);: NEXT I
110 TRY=0: PRINT : PRINT "  LETTER
    KEYS FOR COLOR CHANGE": PRINT
    "  ARROW KEYS FOR ADVANCE AND BA
    CK": PRINT "  HIT RETURN TO ACC
    EPT GUESS #";
```

```
200 Y=TRY*2 MOD 36+1:TRY=TRY+1:
    TAB 32: PRINT TRY;: COLOR=
    0: HLIN 0,39 AT Y:FLASH=1: FOR
    N=1 TO 5:A(N)=8: GOSUB 1000
    : NEXT N:N=1
300 FOR WAIT=1 TO 10:KEY= PEEK
    (-16384): IF KEY<132 THEN 310
    : POKE -16368,0:FLASH=1: FOR
    I=1 TO 8: IF KEY<> ASC(X$(I)
    ) THEN NEXT I: IF I=9 THEN
    310:A(N)=I:KEY=149
310 GOSUB 1000: IF KEY=141 THEN
    400: IF KEY=136 AND N)1 OR
    KEY=149 AND N<6 THEN N=N+KEY/
    5-28: NEXT WAIT:FLASH=1-FLASH:
    GOTO 300
400 COLOR=15:M=0: FOR I=1 TO 5:
    D(I)=C(I):J=I: GOSUB 2000: NEXT
    I: IF M=5 THEN 500: COLOR=5
    : FOR J=1 TO 5: FOR I=1 TO
    5: GOSUB 2000: NEXT I,J: GOTO
    200
500 PRINT : PRINT "
YOU GOT IT IN "
    ;TRY;" TRIES (";: IF TRY<7 THEN
    PRINT "EXCELLENT";: IF TRY>
    6 AND TRY<10 THEN PRINT "GOOD"
    ;
510 IF TRY>9 AND TRY<15 THEN PRINT
    "AVERAGE";: IF TRY>14 THEN
    PRINT "POOR";: PRINT ")": CALL
    -384: TAB 5: PRINT "HIT ANY KEY
    TO PLAY AGAIN": GOTO 100
1000 IF N=6 THEN RETURN : COLOR=
     X(A(N))*FLASH: HLIN N*4-2,N*
     4 AT Y: RETURN
2000 IF A(I)<>D(J) THEN RETURN :
     M=M+1: PLOT 21+M,Y: PRINT
     "";:A(I)=0:D(J)=9: RETURN
```

```
3000 REM CALL -384 SETS INVERSE VID
3010 REM CALL -380 SETS NORMAL VID
3020 REM PEEK(-16384) IS KBD (ASCII)
     (IF > 127 THEN STROBE SET)
3030 REM POKE-16368 CLRS KBD STROBE
3040 REM CALL-936 CLEARS SCREEN AND
     TABS CURSOR TO UPPER LEFT.
3050 REM IN 310, KEY/5-28= -1 OR +1
     (ARROW KEY=136 OR 149 ASCII)
4000 REM STMTS 10-50 INTRO
4010 REM STMTS 100-110 NEW SETUP
4020 REM STMT 200 NEW GUESS
4030 REM STMTS 300-310 USER INPUT
4040 REM STMT 400 GUESS EVAL
4050 REM STMTS 500-510 WIN
4060 REM SUBR 1000 COLOR LINE
4070 REM SUBR 2000 MATCH TEST
```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

This program plots three Biorhythm functions: Physical (P), Emotional (E), and Mental (M) or intellectual. All three functions are plotted in the color graphics display mode.

Biorhythm theory states that aspects of the mind run in cycles. A brief description of the three cycles follows:

Physical

The Physical Biorhythm takes 23 days to complete and is an indirect indicator of the physical state of the individual. It covers physical well-being, basic bodily functions, strength, coordination, and resistance to disease.

Emotional

The Emotional Biorhythm takes 28 days to complete. It indirectly indicates the level of sensitivity, mental health, mood, and creativity.

Mental

The mental cycle takes 33 days to complete and indirectly indicates the level of alertness, logic and analytic functions of the individual, and mental receptivity.

Biorhythms

Biorhythms are thought to affect behavior. When they cross a "baseline" the functions change phase - become unstable - and this causes Critical Days. These days are, according to the theory, our weakest and most vulnerable times. Accidents, catching colds, and bodily harm may occur on physically critical days. Depression, quarrels, and frustration are most likely on emotionally critical days. Finally, slowness of the mind, resistance to new situations and unclear thinking are likely on mentally critical days.

REQUIREMENTS

This program fits into a 4K or greater system.
BASIC is the programming language used.

```
5 POKE 2,173: POKE 3,48: POKE
   4,192: POKE 5,165: POKE 6,0
   : POKE 7,32: POKE 8,168: POKE
   9,252: POKE 10,165: POKE 11
   ,1: POKE 12,208: POKE 13,4
10 POKE 14,198: POKE 15,24: POKE
   16,240: POKE 17,5: POKE 18,
   198: POKE 19,1: POKE 20,76:
   POKE 21,2: POKE 22,0: POKE
   23,96
15 GOTO 85
20 TT=3: GOSUB 30: RETURN
25 PRINT "*************************
   **************": RETURN
30 KK=8:TON=500: GOSUB 45: RETURN
35 KK=8:TON=250: GOSUB 45: RETURN
40 KK=8:TON=250: GOSUB 45:KK=9
   ;TON=250: GOSUB 45: RETURN
45 POKE 1,TON MOD 256: POKE 24
   ,TON/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL
   2: RETURN
50 A=(19-(P*B(I)/100))*(P*100<
   C(I))+(P*100>C(I))*(P*100<=
   3*C(I))*((P*100-C(I))/100*B(
   I)/100)
55 A=A+(P*100>3*C(I))*(30-((P*
   100-3*C(I))/100*B(I)/100)):
   A=39*(A>39)+A*(A<40): RETURN
60 KK=8:TM=500: GOSUB 70:KK=9;
   TM=250: GOSUB 70: RETURN
65 KK=7:TM=10: GOSUB 70: RETURN
70 POKE 1,TM MOD 256: POKE 24,
   TM/256+1: POKE 0,KK: CALL 2
   : RETURN
75 GOSUB 60: INPUT "DATE (M,D,Y) "
   ,M,D,Y:Y=Y+(Y<100)*1900
80 A=Y-(M<3):N=Y MOD 58*365-Y/
   58+82+A/4-A/400+M*31-M/12-N/
   7-M/5-3*(M>2)+D: IF N<0 THEN
   N=N+21252: RETURN
85 DIM N$(10),B$(3),B(3),C(3),
   BV(3);B(1)=348:B(2)=286:B(3
   )=242:C(1)=575:C(2)=700:C(3
   )=825:BV(1)=23:BV(2)=28
90 BV(3)=33: TEXT : CALL -936:
   POKE 34,20: GOSUB 20: GOSUB
   25: GOSUB 20: PRINT : TAB 10
   : PRINT "APPLE II BIORHYTHM (4K)
   ": TAB 15: PRINT
95 GOSUB 25: TAB 5: PRINT "COPYRIGH
   T 1977 APPLE COMPUTER INC."
   : POKE 34,24: VTAB 24
100 GOSUB 60: INPUT "NAME ",N$:
    VTAB 22: PRINT N$: VTAB 24
    : PRINT "BIRTH ";: GOSUB 75
    : VTAB 22: TAB 21: PRINT "BIRTH
    DATE ";M;",";D;",";Y: VTAB
    24:N1=N: CALL -868
105 PRINT "FORECAST ";: GOSUB 75
    :N=N-N1: IF N<0 THEN N=N+21252
    : VTAB 23: TAB 18: PRINT "FORECA
    ST DATE ";M;",";D;",";Y: VTAB
    24: CALL -868
110 J=1: GR : POKE 34,23: FOR X=
    10 TO 20: COLOR=3: HLIN 0,31
    AT X: NEXT X: HLIN 1,3 AT
    3: HLIN 1,3 AT 37: VLIN 2,4
    AT 2: VTAB 21
115 FOR Y=1 TO 31 STEP 3: PRINT
    Y;: IF Y<10 THEN PRINT ".";
    : PRINT " ";: NEXT Y: PRINT
    " P E M": VTAB 24
120 VTAB 23: PRINT "DAYS LIVED "
    ;N: FOR I=1 TO 3: COLOR=1*(
    I=1)+6*(I=2)+0*(I=3): VLIN
    0,39 AT 33+I+I: VTAB 24
125 FOR X=0 TO 31:P=(N MOD BV(I)
    +X) MOD BV(I): GOSUB 50: PLOT
    X,A: GOSUB 65: NEXT X: NEXT
    I
130 PRINT : INPUT "ANOTHER PLOT (Y/N
    ) ",B$: IF B$(1,1)="Y" THEN
    90: END
```

PROGRAM DESCRIPTION

DRAGON MAZE is a game that will test your skill and memory. A maze is constructed on the video screen. You watch carefully as it is completed. After it is finished the maze is hidden as if the lights were turned out. The object of the game is to get out of the maze before the dragon eats you. A reddish-brown square indicates your position and a purple square represents the dragon's.* You move by hitting a letter on the keyboard; U for up, D for down, R for right, and L for left. As you advance so does the dragon. The scent of humans drives the dragon crazy; when he is enraged he breaks through walls to get at you. DRAGON MAZE is not a game for the weak at heart. Try it if you dare to attempt out-smarting the dragon.

REQUIREMENTS

8K or greater Apple II computer system.
BASIC is the programming language.

* Color tints may vary depending upon video monitor or television adjustments.

```
1 TEXT : CALL -936
2 PRINT "WELCOME TO THE DRAGON'S M
  AZE!"
3 PRINT "YOU MAY WATCH WHILE I BUI
  LD A MAZE,"
4 PRINT "BUT WHEN IT'S COMPLETE, I
  'LL ERASE"
5 PRINT "THE PICTURE. THEN YOU'LL
  ONLY SEE THE WALLS AS YOU BUMP I
  NTO THEM."
6 PRINT "TO MOVE, YOU HIT 'R' FOR
  RIGHT,"
7 PRINT "'L' FOR LEFT, 'U' FOR UP,
  AND"
8 PRINT "'D' FOR DOWN. DO NOT HIT
  RETURN!"
9 PRINT
10 PRINT "THE OBJECT IS FOR YOU (TH
   E GREEN DOT"
11 PRINT "TO GET TO THE DOOR ON THE
   RIGHT SIDE"
12 PRINT "BEFORE THE DRAGON (THE RE
   D DOT) EATS"
13 PRINT "YOU."
14 PRINT "BEWARE!!!!!!!!!! SOMETIMES
   THE DRAGON"
15 PRINT "GETS REAL MAD, AND CLIMBS
   OVER A WALL."
16 PRINT "BUT MOST OF THE TIME, HE
   CAN'T GO OVER"
17 PRINT "AND HAS TO GO AROUND."
18 PRINT
19 PRINT "(HINT: YOU CAN OFTEN TELL
   WHERE A WALL"
20 PRINT "IS, EVEN BEFORE YOU CAN S
   EE IT, BY"
21 PRINT "THE FACT THAT THE DRAGON
   CAN'T GET"
22 PRINT "THROUGH IT!)"
23 PRINT
89 DIM A$(3)
90 PRINT "TYPE 'GO' TO BEGIN "
   ;: INPUT A$
100 GR : COLOR=15
105 CALL -936: PRINT "DRAGON MAZE"
    ;: TAB (25): PRINT "GARY J. SHAN
    NON"
110 FOR I=0 TO 39 STEP 3: VLIN
    0,39 AT I: HLIN 0,39 AT I: NEXT
    I
120 COLOR=0
130 S=1000
1000 DIM M(169),T(169)
1001 FOR I=1 TO 169:T(I)=0: NEXT
     I
1010 FOR I=1 TO 169:M(I)=11: NEXT
     I
1030 X= RND (13)+1:Y= RND (13)+1
     :C=169
1035 IF C=1 THEN 1200
1040 R=0:D=0:L=0:U=0:K=X+13*(Y-1
     ):M(K)=- ABS (M(K)):C=C-1
1050 IF X=13 THEN 1060:R=M(K+1))
     0
1060 IF Y=13 THEN 1070:D=M(K+13)
     )0
1070 IF X=1 THEN 1080:L=M(K-1))0
1080 IF Y=1 THEN 1090:U=M(K-13))
     0
1090 Q=R+D+L+U
1100 IF (Q<3 AND RND (10)<2) OR
     Q=0 THEN 1170
1110 DR= RND (4)
1120 GOTO 1130+10*DR
1130 IF NOT R THEN 1110:M(K)=M(K)
     +1:X=X+1
1135 VLIN 3*Y-2,3*Y-1 AT 3*(X-1)
1136 GOTO 1035
1140 IF NOT D THEN 1110:M(K)=M(K)
     +10:Y=Y+1
1145 HLIN 3*X-2,3*X-1 AT 3*(Y-1)
1146 GOTO 1035
1150 IF NOT L THEN 1110:M(K-1)=M(
     K-1)-1:X=X-1
1155 VLIN 3*Y-2,3*Y-1 AT 3*X
1156 GOTO 1035
1160 IF NOT U THEN 1110:M(K-13)=
     M(K-13)-10:Y=Y-1
1165 HLIN 3*X-2,3*X-1 AT 3*Y: GOTO
     1035
1170 X= RND (13)+1:Y= RND (13)+1
1180 IF M(X+13*(Y-1))>0 THEN 1170
1190 C=C+1: GOTO 1035
1200 GOSUB 5000: PRINT "THE MAZE IS R
     EADY"
1205 GR : COLOR=15
1210 VLIN 0,39 AT 0: VLIN 0,39 AT
     39: HLIN 0,39 AT 0: HLIN 0,
     39 AT 39
1220 X=1:Y= RND (13)+1: COLOR=8:
     PLOT 3*X-2,3*Y-2
```

```
1225 HX=3*X-2:HY=3*Y-2
1230 WY= RND (13)+1
1240 COLOR=0: VLIN 3*WY-2,3*WY-1
     AT 39
1250 SX=13:SY=WY
1260 QX=3*SX-2:QY=3*SY-2
1270 RD=1
1500 K= PEEK (-16384): IF K<128 THEN
     1500
1510 POKE -16368,0
1515 QQ=K: GOSUB 7000:K=QQ
1516 IF SX=X AND SY=Y THEN 8000
1520 IF K= ASC("R") THEN 2000
1530 IF K= ASC("L") THEN 2500
1540 IF K= ASC("U") THEN 3000
1550 IF K= ASC("D") THEN 3500
1560 GOSUB 5000: GOTO 1500
2000 DX=1:DY=0
2010 IF M(X+13*(Y-1)) MOD 10 THEN
     4000
2020 FX=3*X-2:FY=3*Y-2: FOR I=1 TO
     3
2030 FX=FX+DX:FY=FY+DY
2040 COLOR=0
2060 FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO 1:
     PLOT HX+K,HY+L: NEXT L,K: COLOR=
     0: FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO
     1: PLOT FX+K,FY+L: NEXT L,K:
     HX=FX:HY=FY
2110 NEXT I
2115 X=X+DX:Y=Y+DY
2116 IF X=13 AND Y=WY THEN 6000
2120 GOTO 1500
2500 DX=-1:DY=0
2510 IF M(X+13*(Y-1)-1) MOD 10 THEN
     4100
```

```
2520 GOTO 2020
3000 DX=0:DY=-1
3010 IF M(X+13*(Y-2))/10 THEN 4200

3020 GOTO 2020
3500 DX=0:DY=1
3510 IF M(X+13*(Y-1))/10 THEN 4300

3520 GOTO 2020
4000 GOSUB 5000
4010 COLOR=15
4020 VLIN 3*(Y-1),3*Y AT 3*X
4030 GOTO 1500
4100 GOSUB 5000
4110 COLOR=15
4120 VLIN 3*(Y-1),3*Y AT 3*(X-1)

4130 GOTO 1500
4200 GOSUB 5000
4210 COLOR=15
4220 HLIN 3*(X-1),3*X AT 3*(Y-1)

4230 GOTO 1500
4300 GOSUB 5000
4310 COLOR=15
4320 HLIN 3*(X-1),3*X AT 3*Y
4330 GOTO 1500
5000 S=S-1: FOR I=1 TO 20:A= PEEK
     (-16336)+ PEEK (-16336)+ PEEK
     (-16336)+ PEEK (-16336): NEXT
     I: RETURN
6000 PRINT "YOU WIN!"
6010 GOSUB 5000: GOSUB 5000: GOSUB
     5000
6020 PRINT "SCORE=";S+3
6030 END
```

```
7000 IF X>SX THEN 7005: IF Y>SY THEN
     7050
7001 IF X<SX THEN 7100: IF Y<SY THEN
     7150
7005 IF SX=13 THEN 7050: IF T(SX+
     13*(SY-1))>9 THEN 7010: IF
     M(SX+13*(SY-1)) MOD 10 THEN
     7050
7010 DX=1:DY=0
7020 COLOR=0
7022 RX=3*SX-2:RY=3*SY-2
7023 FOR I=1 TO 3:RX=RX+DX:RY=RY+
     DY
7024 COLOR=0
7025 FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO 1:
     PLOT QX+K,QY+L: NEXT L,K: COLOR=
     RD: FOR K=0 TO 1: FOR L=0 TO
     1: PLOT RX+K,RY+L: NEXT L,K:
     QX=RX:QY=RY
7030 NEXT I
7035 SX=SX+DX:SY=SY+DY
7040 T(SX+13*(SY-1))=T(SX+13*(SY-
     1))+1
7045 RETURN
7050 IF SY=13 THEN 7100: IF T(SX+
     13*(SY-1))>9 THEN 7060: IF
     M(SX+13*(SY-1))/10 THEN 7100

7060 DX=0:DY=1: GOTO 7020
7100 IF SX=1 THEN 7150: IF T(SX+
     13*(SY-1))>9 THEN 7110: IF
     M(SX+13*(SY-1)-1) MOD 10 THEN
     7150
```

```
7110 DX=-1:DY=0: GOTO 7020
7150 IF SY=1 THEN 7005: IF T(SX+
     13*(SY-1))>9 THEN 7160: IF
     M(SX+13*(SY-1)-13)/10 THEN
     7005
7160 DX=0:DY=-1: GOTO 7020
8000 GOSUB 5000: GOSUB 5000: GOSUB
     5000: GOSUB 5000: PRINT "THE DRA
     GON GOT YOU!"
9999 END

>
```

APPLE II FIRMWARE

System Monitor Commands

Apple II contains a powerful machine level monitor for use by the advanced programmer. To enter the monitor either press RESET button on keyboard or CALL-151 (Hex FF65) from Basic. Apple II will respond with an "*" (asterisk) prompt character on the TV display. This action will not kill current BASIC program which may be re-entered by a C^C (control C). NOTE: "adrs" is a four digit hexidecimal number and "data" is a two digit hexidecimal number. Remember to press "return" button at the end of each line.

Command Format	Example	Description
Examine Memory		
adrs	*CØF2	Examines (displays) single memory location of (adrs)
adrs1.adrs2	*1Ø24.1Ø48	Examines (displays) range of memory from (adrs1) thru (adrs2)
(return)	* (return)	Examines (displays) next 8 memory locations.
.adrs2	*.4Ø96	Examines (displays) memory from current location through location (adrs2)
Change Memory		
adrs:data data data	*A256:EF 2Ø 43	Deposits data into memory starting at location (adrs).
:data data data	*:FØ A2 12	Deposits data into memory starting after (adrs) last used for deposits.
Move Memory		
adrs1<adrs2. adrs3M	*1ØØ<BØ1Ø.B41ØM	Copy the data now in the memory range from (adrs2) to (adrs3) into memory locations starting at (adrs1).
Verify Memory		
adrs1<adrs2. adrs3V	*1ØØ<BØ1Ø.B41ØV	Verify that block of data in memory range from (adrs2) to (adrs3) exactly matches data block starting at memory location (adrs1) and displays differences if any.

Command Format	Example	Description
Cassette I/O		
adrsl.adrs2R	*3ØØ.4FFR	Reads cassette data into specified memory (adrs) range. Record length must be same as memory range or an error will occur.
adrsl.adrs2W	*8ØØ.9FFW	Writes onto cassette data from specified memory (adrs) range.
Display		
I	*I	Set inverse video mode. (Black characters on white background)
N	*N	Set normal video mode. (White characters on black background)
Dis-assembler		
adrsL	*C8ØØL	Decodes 2Ø instructions starting at memory (adrs) into 65Ø2 assembly nmenonic code.
L	*L	Decodes next 2Ø instructions starting at current memory address.
Mini-assembler		
(Turn-on)	*F666G	Turns-on mini-assembler. Prompt character is now a "!" (exclamation point).
$(monitor command)	!$C8ØØL	Executes any monitor command from mini-assembler then returns control to mini-assembler. Note that many monitor commands change current memory address reference so that it is good practice to retype desired address reference upon return to mini-assembler.
adrs:(65Ø2 MNEMONIC instruction)	!CØ1Ø:STA 23FF	Assembles a mnemonic 65Ø2 instruction into machine codes. If error, machine will refuse instruction, sound bell, and reprint line with up arrow under error.

Command Format	Example	Description
(space) (6502 mnemonic instruction)	! STA Ø1FF	Assembles instruction into next available memory location. (Note space between "!" and instruction)
(TURN-OFF)	! (Reset Button)	Exits mini-assembler and returns to system monitor.

Monitor Program Execution and Debugging

adrsG	*3ØØG	Runs machine level program starting at memory (adrs).
adrsT	*8ØØT	Traces a program starting at memory location (adrs) and continues trace until hitting a breakpoint. Break occurs on instruction ØØ (BRK), and returns control to system monitor. Opens 6502 status registers (see note 1).
adrsS	*CØ5ØS	Single steps through program beginning at memory location (adrs). Type a letter S for each additional step that you want displayed. Opens 6502 status registers (see Note 1).
(Control E)	*E^C	Displays 6502 status registers and opens them for modification (see Note 1).
(Control Y)	*Y^C	Executes user specified machine language subroutine starting at memory location (3F8).

Note 1:

6502 status registers are open if they are last line displayed on screen. To change them type ":" then "data" for each register.

```
Example:   A = 3C  X = FF  Y = ØØ  P = 32  S = F2
           *: FF              Changes A register only
           *:FF ØØ 33         Changes A, X, and Y registers
```

To change S register, you must first retype data for A, X, Y and P.

Hexidecimal Arithmetic

data1+data2	*78+34	Performs hexidecimal sum of data1 plus data2.
data1-data2	*AE-34	Performs hexidecimal difference of data1 minus data2.

Command Format	Example	Description

Set Input/Output Ports

| (X) (Control P) | *5P^C | Sets printer output to I/O slot number (X). (see Note 2 below) |
| (X) (Control K) | *2K^C | Sets keyboard input to I/O slot number (X). (see Note 2 below) |

Note 2:

Only slots 1 through 7 are addressable in this mode. Address Ø (Ex: ØP^C or ØK^C) resets ports to internal video display and keyboard. These commands will not work unless Apple II interfaces are plugged into specificed I/O slot.

Multiple Commands

| | *1ØØL 4ØØG AFFT | Multiple monitor commands may be given on same line if separated by a "space". |
| | *LLLL | Single letter commands may be repeated without spaces. |

SPECIAL CONTROL AND EDITING CHARACTERS

"Control" characters are indicated by a super-scripted "C" such as G^C. They are obtained by holding down the CTRL key while typing the specified letter. Control characters are NOT displayed on the TV screen. B^C and C^C must be followed by a carriage return. Screen editing characters are indicated by a sub-scripted "E" such as D_E. They are obtained by pressing and releasing the ESC key then typing specified letter. Edit characters send information only to display screen and does not send data to memory. For example, U^C moves to cursor to right and copies text while A_E moves cursor to right but does not copy text.

CHARACTER	DESCRIPTION OF ACTION
RESET key	Immediately interrupts any program execution and resets computer. Also sets all text mode with scrolling window at maximum. Control is transfered to System Monitor and Apple prompts with a "*" (asterisk) and a bell. Hitting RESET key does NOT destroy existing BASIC or machine language program.
Control B	If in System Monitor (as indicated by a "*"), a control B and a carriage return will transfer control to BASIC, scratching (killing) any existing BASIC program and set HIMEM: to maximum installed user memory and LOMEM: to 2048.
Control C	If in BASIC, halts program and displays line number where stop occurred*. Program may be continued with a CON command. If in System Monitor, (as indicated by "*"), control C and a carraige return will enter BASIC without killing current program.
Control G	Sounds bell (beeps speaker)
Control H	Backspaces cursor and deletes any overwritten characters from computer but not from screen. Apply supplied keyboards have special key "←" on right side of keyboard that provides this functions without using control button.
Control J	Issues line feed only
Control V	Compliment to H^C. Forward spaces cursor and copies over written characters. Apple keyboards have "→" key on right side which also performs this function.
Control X	Immediately deletes current line.

    * If BASIC program is expecting keyboard input, you will have to hit carriage return key after typing control C.

CHARACTER	DESCRIPTION OF ACTION
A_E	Move cursor to right
B_E	Move cursor to left
C_E	Move cursor down
D_E	Move cursor up
E_E	Clear text from cursor to end of line
F_E	Clear text from cursor to end of page
$@_E$	Home cursor to top of page, clear text to end of page.

Special Controls and Features

Hex	BASIC Example	Description

Display Mode Controls

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
CØ50	10 POKE -163Ø4,Ø	Set color graphics mode
CØ51	2Ø POKE -163Ø3,Ø	Set text mode
CØ52	3Ø POKE -163Ø2,Ø	Clear mixed graphics
CØ53	4Ø POKE -163Ø1,Ø	Set mixed graphics (4 lines text)
CØ54	5Ø POKE -163ØØ,Ø	Clear display Page 2 (BASIC commands use Page 1 only)
CØ55	6Ø POKE -16299,Ø	Set display to Page 2 (alternate)
CØ56	7Ø POKE -16298,Ø	Clear HIRES graphics mode
CØ57	8Ø POKE -16297,Ø	Set HIRES graphics mode

TEXT Mode Controls

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
ØØ2Ø	9Ø POKE 32,L1	Set left side of scrolling window to location specified by L1 in range of Ø to 39.
ØØ21	1ØØ POKE 33,W1	Set window width to amount specified by W1. L1+W1<4Ø. W1>Ø
ØØ22	11Ø POKE 34,T1	Set window top to line specified by T1 in range of Ø to 23
ØØ23	12Ø POKE 35,B1	Set window bottom to line specified by B1 in the range of Ø to 23. B1>T1
ØØ24	13Ø CH=PEEK(36) 14Ø POKE 36,CH 15Ø TAB(CH+1)	Read/set cusor horizontal position in the range of Ø to 39. If using TAB, you must add "1" to cusor position read value; Ex. 14Ø and 15Ø perform identical function.
ØØ25	16Ø CV=PEEK(37) 17Ø POKE 37,CV 18Ø VTAB(CV+1)	Similar to above. Read/set cusor vertical position in the range Ø to 23.
ØØ32	19Ø POKE 5Ø,127 2ØØ POKE 5Ø,255	Set inverse flag if 127 (Ex. 19Ø) Set normal flag if 255(Ex. 2ØØ)
FC58	21Ø CALL -936	(@E) Home cusor, clear screen
FC42	22Ø CALL -958	(FE) Clear from cusor to end of page

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
FC9C	230 CALL -868	(E_E) Clear from cusor to end of line
FC66	240 CALL -922	(J^C) Line feed
FC70	250 CALL -912	Scroll up text one line

Miscellaneous

Hex	BASIC Example	Description
C030	360 X=PEEK(-16336) 365 POKE -16336,0	Toggle speaker
C000	370 X=PEEK(-16384	Read keyboard; if X>127 then key was pressed.
C010	380 POKE -16368,0	Clear keyboard strobe - always after reading keyboard.
C061	390 X=PEEK(16287)	Read PDL(0) push button switch. If X>127 then switch is "on".
C062	400 X=PEEK(-16286)	Read PDL(1) push button switch.
C063	410 X=PEEK(-16285	Read PDL(2) push button switch.
C058	420 POKE -16296,0	Clear Game I/O AN0 output
C059	430 POKE -16295,0	Set Game I/O AN0 output
C05A	440 POKE -16294,0	Clear Game I/O AN1 output
C05B	450 POKE -16293,0	Set Game I/O AN1 output
C05C	460 POKE -16292,0	Clear Game I/O AN2 output
C05D	470 POKE -16291,0	Set Game I/O AN2 output
C05E	480 POKE -16290,0	Clear Game I/O AN3 output
C05F	490 POKE -16289,0	Set Game I/O AN3 output

```
***************************
*                         *
*       APPLE II          *
*    SYSTEM MONITOR       *
*                         *
*    COPYRIGHT 1977 BY    *
*   APPLE COMPUTER, INC.  *
*                         *
*   ALL RIGHTS RESERVED   *
*                         *
*       S. WOZNIAK        *
*        A. BAUM          *
*                         *
***************************
```

	TITLE		"APPLE II SYSTEM MONITOR"
LOC0	EPZ	$00	
LOC1	EPZ	$01	
WNDLFT	EPZ	$20	
WNDWDTH	EPZ	$21	
WNDTOP	EPZ	$22	
WNDBTM	EPZ	$23	
CH	EPZ	$24	
CV	EPZ	$25	
GBASL	EPZ	$26	
GBASH	EPZ	$27	
BASL	EPZ	$28	
BASH	EPZ	$29	
BAS2L	EPZ	$2A	
BAS2H	EPZ	$2B	
H2	EPZ	$2C	
LMNEM	EPZ	$2C	
RTNL	EPZ	$2C	
V2	EPZ	$2D	
RMNEM	EPZ	$2D	
RTNH	EPZ	$2D	
MASK	EPZ	$2E	
CHKSUM	EPZ	$2E	
FORMAT	EPZ	$2E	
LASTIN	EPZ	$2F	
LENGTH	EPZ	$2F	
SIGN	EPZ	$2F	
COLOR	EPZ	$30	
MODE	EPZ	$31	
INVFLG	EPZ	$32	
PROMPT	EPZ	$33	
YSAV	EPZ	$34	
YSAV1	EPZ	$35	
CSWL	EPZ	$36	
CSWH	EPZ	$37	
KSWL	EPZ	$38	
KSWH	EPZ	$39	
PCL	EPZ	$3A	
PCH	EPZ	$3B	
XQT	EPZ	$3C	
A1L	EPZ	$3C	
A1H	EPZ	$3D	
A2L	EPZ	$3E	
A2H	EPZ	$3F	
A3L	EPZ	$40	
A3H	EPZ	$41	
A4L	EPZ	$42	
A4H	EPZ	$43	
A5L	EPZ	$44	
A5H	EPZ	$45	

```
                        ACC       EPZ   $45
                        XREG      EPZ   $46
                        YREG      EPZ   $47
                        STATUS    EPZ   $48
                        SPNT      EPZ   $49
                        RNDL      EPZ   $4E
                        RNDH      EPZ   $4F
                        ACL       EPZ   $50
                        ACH       EPZ   $51
                        XTNDL     EPZ   $52
                        XTNDH     EPZ   $53
                        AUXL      EPZ   $54
                        AUXH      EPZ   $55
                        PICK      EPZ   $95
                        IN        EQU   $0200
                        USRADR    EQU   $03F8
                        NMI       EQU   $03FB
                        IRQLOC    EQU   $03FE
                        IOADR     EQU   $C000
                        KBD       EQU   $C000
                        KBDSTRB   EQU   $C010
                        TAPEOUT   EQU   $C020
                        SPKR      EQU   $C030
                        TXTCLR    EQU   $C050
                        TXTSET    EQU   $C051
                        MIXCLR    EQU   $C052
                        MIXSET    EQU   $C053
                        LOWSCR    EQU   $C054
                        HISCR     EQU   $C055
                        LORES     EQU   $C056
                        HIRES     EQU   $C057
                        TAPEIN    EQU   $C060
                        PADDL0    EQU   $C064
                        PTRIG     EQU   $C070
                        BASIC     EQU   $E000
                        BASIC2    EQU   $E003
                        ORG   $F800         ROM START ADDRESS
F800: 4A                PLOT      LSR   A           Y-COORD/2
F801: 08                          PHP               SAVE LSB IN CARRY
F802: 20 47 F8                    JSR   GBASCALC  CALC BASE ADR IN GBASL,H
F805: 28                          PLP               RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F806: A9 0F                       LDA   #$0F        MASK $0F IF EVEN
F808: 90 02                       BCC   RTMASK
F80A: 69 E0                       ADC   #$E0        MASK $F0 IF ODD
F80C: 85 2E            RTMASK     STA   MASK
F80E: B1 26            PLOT1      LDA   (GBASL),Y DATA
F810: 45 30                       EOR   COLOR       XOR COLOR
F812: 25 2E                       AND   MASK        AND MASK
F814: 51 26                       EOR   (GBASL),Y   XOR DATA
F816: 91 26                       STA   (GBASL),Y   TO DATA
F818: 60                          RTS
F819: 20 00 F8         HLINE      JSR   PLOT        PLOT SQUARE
F81C: C4 2C            HLINE1     CPY   H2          DONE?
F81E: B0 11                       BCS   RTS1        YES, RETURN
F820: C8                          INY               NO, INCR INDEX (X-COORD)
F821: 20 0E F8                    JSR   PLOT1       PLOT NEXT SQUARE
F824: 90 F6                       BCC   HLINE1      ALWAYS TAKEN
F826: 69 01            VLINEZ     ADC   #$01        NEXT Y-COORD
F828: 48               VLINE      PHA               SAVE ON STACK
F829: 20 00 F8                    JSR   PLOT        PLOT SQUARE
F82C: 68                          PLA
F82D: C5 2D                       CMP   V2          DONE?
F82F: 90 F5                       BCC   VLINEZ      NO,LOOP.
F831: 60               RTS1       RTS
F832: A0 2F            CLRSCR     LDY   #$2F        MAX Y, FULL SCRN CLR
F834: D0 02                       BNE   CLRSC2      ALWAYS TAKEN
F836: A0 27            CLRTOP     LDY   #$27        MAX Y, TOP SCRN CLR
F838: 84 2D            CLRSC2     STY   V2          STORE AS BOTTOM COORD
       *                                FOR VLINE CALLS
F83A: A0 27                       LDY   #$27        RIGHTMOST X-COORD (COLUMN)
F83C: A9 00            CLRSC3     LDA   #$0         TOP COORD FOR VLINE CALLS
F83E: 85 30                       STA   COLOR       CLEAR COLOR (BLACK)
F840: 20 28 F8                    JSR   VLINE       DRAW VLINE
F843: 88                          DEY               NEXT LEFTMOST X-COORD
F844: 10 F6                       BPL   CLRSC3      LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F846: 60                          RTS
F847: 48               GBASCALC   PHA               FOR INPUT 000DEFGH
F848: 4A                          LSR   A
F849: 29 03                       AND   #$03
F84B: 09 04                       ORA   #$04        GENERATE GBASH=000001FG
F84D: 85 27                       STA   GBASH
F84F: 68                          PLA               AND GBASL=HDEDE000
F850: 29 18                       AND   #$18
F852: 90 02                       BCC   GBCALC
F854: 69 7F                       ADC   #$7F
F856: 85 26            GBCALC     STA   GBASL
```

77

```
F858: 0A                   ASL   A
F859: 0A                   ASL   A
F85A: 05 26                ORA   GBASL
F85C: 85 26                STA   GBASL
F85E: 60                   RTS
F85F: A5 30      NXTCOL    LDA   COLOR    INCREMENT COLOR BY 3
F861: 18                   CLC
F862: 69 03                ADC   #$03
F864: 29 0F      SETCOL    AND   #$0F     SETS COLOR=17*A MOD 16
F866: 85 30                STA   COLOR
F868: 0A                   ASL   A        BOTH HALF BYTES OF COLOR EQUAL
F869: 0A                   ASL   A
F86A: 0A                   ASL   A
F86B: 0A                   ASL   A
F86C: 05 30                ORA   COIOR
F86E: 85 30                STA   COLOR
F870: 60                   RTS
F871: 4A         SCRN      LSR   A        READ SCREEN Y-COORD/2
F872: 08                   PHP            SAVE LSB (CARRY)
F873: 20 47 F8             JSR   GBASCALC CALC BASE ADDRESS
F876: B1 26                LDA   (GBASL),Y GET BYTE
F878: 28                   PLP            RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F879: 90 04      SCRN2     BCC   RTMSKZ   IF EVEN, USE LO H
F87B: 4A                   LSR   A
F87C: 4A                   LSR   A
F87D: 4A                   LSR   A        SHIFT HIGH HALF BYTE DOWN
F87E: 4A                   LSR   A
F87F: 29 0F      RTMSKZ    AND   #$0F     MASK 4-BITS
F881: 60                   RTS
F882: A6 3A      INSDS1    LDX   PCL      PRINT PCL,H
F884: A4 3B                LDY   PCH
F886: 20 96 FD             JSR   PRYX2
F889: 20 48 F9             JSR   PRBLNK   FOLLOWED BY A BLANK
F88C: A1 3A                LDA   (PCL,X)  GET OP CODE
F88E: A8         INSDS2    TAY
F88F: 4A                   LSR   A        EVEN/ODD TEST
F890: 90 09                BCC   IEVEN
F892: 6A                   ROR   A        BIT 1 TEST
F893: B0 10                BCS   ERR      XXXXXX11 INVALID OP
F895: C9 A2                CMP   #$A2
F897: F0 0C                BEQ   ERR      OPCODE $89 INVALID
F899: 29 87                AND   #$87     MASK BITS
F89B: 4A         IEVEN     LSR   A        LSB INTO CARRY FOR L/R TEST
F89C: AA                   TAX
F89D: BD 62 F9             LDA   FMT1,X   GET FORMAT INDEX BYTE
F8A0: 20 79 F8             JSR   SCRN2    R/L H-BYTE ON CARRY
F8A3: D0 04                BNE   GETFMT
F8A5: A0 80      ERR       LDY   #$80     SUBSTITUTE $80 FOR INVALID OPS
F8A7: A9 00                LDA   #$0      SET PRINT FORMAT INDEX TO 0
F8A9: AA         GETFMT    TAX
F8AA: BD A6 F9             LDA   FMT2,X   INDEX INTO PRINT FORMAT TABLE
F8AD: 85 2E                STA   FORMAT   SAVE FOR ADR FIELD FORMATTING
F8AF: 29 03                AND   #$03     MASK FOR 2-BIT LENGTH
             *                          (0=1 BYTE, 1=2 BYTE, 2=3 BYTE)
F8B1: 85 2F                STA   LENGTH
F8B3: 98                   TYA            OPCODE
F8B4: 29 8F                AND   #$8F     MASK FOR 1XXX1010 TEST
F8B6: AA                   TAX            SAVE IT
F8B7: 98                   TYA            OPCODE TO A AGAIN
F8B8: A0 03                LDY   #$03
F8BA: E0 8A                CPX   #$8A
F8BC: F0 0B                BEQ   MNNDX3
F8BE: 4A         MNNDX1    LSR   A
F8BF: 90 08                BCC   MNNDX3   FORM INDEX INTO MNEMONIC TABLE
F8C1: 4A                   LSR   A
F8C2: 4A         MNNDX2    LSR   A        1) 1XXX1010=>00101XXX
F8C3: 09 20                ORA   #$20     2) XXXYYY01=>00111XXX
F8C5: 88                   DEY            3) XXXYYY10=>00110XXX
F8C6: D0 FA                BNE   MNNDX2   4) XXXYY100=>00100XXX
F8C8: C8                   INY            5) XXXXX000=>000XXXXX
F8C9: 88         MNNDX3    DEY
F8CA: D0 F2                BNE   MNNDX1
F8CC: 60                   RTS
F8CD: FF FF FF            DFB   $FF,$FF,$FF
F8D0: 20 82 F8  INSTDSP    JSR   INSDS1   GEN FMT, LEN BYTES
F8D3: 48                   PHA            SAVE MNEMONIC TABLE INDEX
F8D4: B1 3A     PRNTOP     LDA   (PCL),Y
F8D6: 20 DA FD             JSR   PRBYTE
F8D9: A2 01                LDX   #$01
F8DB: 20 4A F9  PRNTBL     JSR   PRBL2    PRINT 2 BLANKS
F8DE: C4 2F                CPY   LENGTH   PRINT INST (1-3 BYTES)
F8E0: C8                   INY            IN A 12 CHR FIELD
F8E1: 90 F1                BCC   PRNTOP
F8E3: A2 03                LDX   #$03     CHAR COUNT FOR MNEMONIC PRINT
F8E5: C0 04                CPY   #$04
```

```
F8E7: 90 F2              BCC   PRNTBL
F8E9: 68                 PLA              RECOVER MNEMONIC INDEX
F8EA: A8                 TAY
F8EB: B9 C0 F9           LDA   MNEML,Y
F8EE: 85 2C              STA   LMNEM      FETCH 3-CHAR MNEMONIC
F8F0: B9 00 FA           LDA   MNEMR,Y    (PACKED IN 2-BYTES)
F8F3: 85 2D              STA   RMNEM
F8F5: A9 00     PRMN1    LDA   #$00
F8F7: A0 05              LDY   #$05
F8F9: 06 2D     PRMN2    ASL   RMNEM      SHIFT 5 BITS OF
F8FB: 26 2C              ROL   LMNEM        CHARACTER INTO A
F8FD: 2A                 ROL   A            (CLEARS CARRY)
F8FE: 88                 DEY
F8FF: D0 F8              BNE   PRMN2
F901: 69 BF              ADC   #$BF       ADD "?" OFFSET
F903: 20 ED FD           JSR   COUT       OUTPUT A CHAR OF MNEM
F906: CA                 DEX
F907: D0 EC              BNE   PRMN1
F909: 20 48 F9           JSR   PRBLNK     OUTPUT 3 BLANKS
F90C: A4 2F              LDY   LENGTH
F90E: A2 06              LDX   #$06       CNT FOR 6 FORMAT BITS
F910: E0 03     PRADR1   CPX   #$03
F912: F0 1C              BEQ   PRADR5     IF X=3 THEN ADDR.
F914: 06 2E     PRADR2   ASL   FORMAT
F916: 90 0E              BCC   PRADR3
F918: BD B3 F9           LDA   CHAR1-1,X
F91B: 20 ED FD           JSR   COUT
F91E: BD B9 F9           LDA   CHAR2-1,X
F921: F0 03              BEQ   PRADR3
F923: 20 ED FD           JSR   COUT
F926: CA        PRADR3   DEX
F927: D0 E7              BNE   PRADR1
F929: 60                 RTS
F92A: 88        PRADR4   DEY
F92B: 30 E7              BMI   PRADR2
F92D: 20 DA FD           JSR   PRBYTE
F930: A5 2E     PRADR5   LDA   FORMAT
F932: C9 E8              CMP   #$E8       HANDLE REL ADR MODE
F934: B1 3A              LDA   (PCL),Y    SPECIAL (PRINT TARGET,
F936: 90 F2              BCC   PRADR4       NOT OFFSET)
F938: 20 56 F9  RELADR   JSR   PCADJ3
F93B: AA                 TAX              PCL,PCH+OFFSET+1 TO A,Y
F93C: E8                 INX
F93D: D0 01              BNE   PRNTYX     +1 TO Y,X
F93F: C8                 INY
F940: 98        PRNTYX   TYA
F941: 20 DA FD  PRNTAX   JSR   PRBYTE     OUTPUT TARGET ADR
F944: 8A        PRNTX    TXA              OF BRANCH AND RETURN
F945: 4C DA FD           JMP   PRBYTE
F948: A2 03     PRBLNK   LDX   #$03       BLANK COUNT
F94A: A9 A0     PRBL2    LDA   #$A0       LOAD A SPACE
F94C: 20 ED FD  PRBL3    JSR   COUT       OUTPUT A BLANK
F94F: CA                 DEX
F950: D0 F8              BNE   PRBL2      LOOP UNTIL COUNT=0
F952: 60                 RTS
F953: 38        PCADJ    SEC              0=1-BYTE,1=2-BYTE,
F954: A5 2F     PCADJ2   LDA   LENGTH       2=3-BYTE
F956: A4 3B     PCADJ3   LDY   PCH
F958: AA                 TAX              TEST DISPLACEMENT SIGN
F959: 10 01              BPL   PCADJ4       (FOR REL BRANCH)
F95B: 88                 DEY              EXTEND NEG BY DECR PCH
F95C: 65 3A     PCADJ4   ADC   PCL
F95E: 90 01              BCC   RTS2       PCL+LENGTH(OR DISPL)+1 TO A
F960: C8                 INY              CARRY INTO Y (PCH)
F961: 60        RTS2     RTS
                  *      FMT1 BYTES:        XXXXXXY0 INSTRS
                  *      IF Y=0             THEN LEFT HALF BYTE
                  *      IF Y=1             THEN RIGHT HALF BYTE
                  *                           (X=INDEX)
F962: 04 20 54
F965: 30 0D     FMT1     DFB   $04,$20,$54,$30,$0D
F967: 80 04 90
F96A: 03 22              DFB   $80,$04,$90,$03,$22
F96C: 54 33 0D
F96F: 80 04              DFB   $54,$33,$0D,$80,$04
F971: 90 04 20
F974: 54 33              DFB   $90,$04,$20,$54,$33
F976: 0D 80 04
F979: 90 04              DFB   $0D,$80,$04,$90,$04
F97B: 20 54 3B
F97E: 0D 80              DFB   $20,$54,$3B,$0D,$80
F980: 04 90 00
F983: 22 44              DFB   $04,$90,$00,$22,$44
F985: 33 0D C8
F988: 44 00              DFB   $33,$0D,$C8,$44,$00
```

79

```
F98A: 11 22 44
F98D: 33 0D              DFB    $11,$22,$44,$33,$0D
F98F: C8 44 A9
F992: 01 22             DFB    $C8,$44,$A9,$01,$22
F994: 44 33 0D
F997: 80 04             DFB    $44,$33,$0D,$80,$04
F999: 90 01 22
F99C: 44 33             DFB    $90,$01,$22,$44,$33
F99E: 0D 80 04
F9A1: 90                DFB    $0D,$80,$04,$90
F9A2: 26 31 87
F9A5: 9A                DFB    $26,$31,$87,$9A ZZXXXY01 INSTR'S
F9A6: 00        FMT2    DFB    $00        ERR
F9A7: 21                DFB    $21        IMM
F9A8: 81                DFB    $81        Z-PAGE
F9A9: 82                DFB    $82        ABS
F9AA: 00                DFB    $00        IMPLIED
F9AB: 00                DFB    $00        ACCUMULATOR
F9AC: 59                DFB    $59        (ZPAG,X)
F9AD: 4D                DFB    $4D        (ZPAG),Y
F9AE: 91                DFB    $91        ZPAG,X
F9AF: 92                DFB    $92        ABS,X
F9B0: 86                DFB    $86        ABS,Y
F9B1: 4A                DFB    $4A        (ABS)
F9B2: 85                DFB    $85        ZPAG,Y
F9B3: 9D                DFB    $9D        RELATIVE
F9B4: AC A9 AC
      A3 A8 A4  CHAR1   ASC    ",),#($"
F9BA: D9 00 D8
F9BD: A4 A4 00  CHAR2   DFB    $D9,$00,$D8,$A4,$A4,$00
          *CHAR2:      "Y",0,"X$$",0
          *           MNEML          IS OF FORM:
          *           (A)    XXXXX000
          *           (B)    XXXYY100
          *           (C)    1XXX1010
          *           (D)    XXXYYY10
          *           (E)    XXXYYY01
          *                  (X=INDEX)
F9C0: 1C 8A 1C
F9C3: 23 5D 8B  MNEML   DFB    $1C,$8A,$1C,$23,$5D,$8B
F9C6: 1B A1 9D
F9C9: 8A 1D 23          DFB    $1B,$A1,$9D,$8A,$1D,$23
F9CC: 9D 8B 1D
F9CF: A1 00 29          DFB    $9D,$8B,$1D,$A1,$00,$29
F9D2: 19 AE 69
F9D5: A8 19 23          DFB    $19,$AE,$69,$A8,$19,$23
F9D8: 24 53 1B
F9DB: 23 24 53          DFB    $24,$53,$1B,$23,$24,$53
F9DE: 19 A1             DFB    $19,$A1    (A) FORMAT ABOVE
F9E0: 00 1A 5B
F9E3: 5B A5 69          DFB    $00,$1A,$5B,$5B,$A5,$69
F9E6: 24 24             DFB    $24,$24    (B) FORMAT
F9E8: AE AE A8
F9EB: AD 29 00          DFB    $AE,$AE,$A8,$AD,$29,$00
F9EE: 7C 00             DFB    $7C,$00    (C) FORMAT
F9F0: 15 9C 6D
F9F3: 9C A5 69          DFB    $15,$9C,$6D,$9C,$A5,$69
F9F6: 29 53             DFB    $29,$53    (D) FORMAT
F9F8: 84 13 34
F9FB: 11 A5 69          DFB    $84,$13,$34,$11,$A5,$69
F9FE: 23 A0             DFB    $23,$A0    (E) FORMAT
FA00: D8 62 5A
FA03: 48 26 62  MNEMR   DFB    $D8,$62,$5A,$48,$26,$62
FA06: 94 88 54
FA09: 44 C8 54          DFB    $94,$88,$54,$44,$C8,$54
FA0C: 68 44 E8
FA0F: 94 00 B4          DFB    $68,$44,$E8,$94,$00,$B4
FA12: 08 84 74
FA15: B4 28 6E          DFB    $08,$84,$74,$B4,$28,$6E
FA18: 74 F4 CC
FA1B: 4A 72 F2          DFB    $74,$F4,$CC,$4A,$72,$F2
FA1E: A4 8A             DFB    $A4,$8A    (A) FORMAT
FA20: 00 AA A2
FA23: A2 74 74          DFB    $00,$AA,$A2,$A2,$74,$74
FA26: 74 72             DFB    $74,$72    (B) FORMAT
FA28: 44 68 B2
FA2B: 32 B2 00          DFB    $44,$68,$B2,$32,$B2,$00
FA2E: 22 00             DFB    $22,$00    (C) FORMAT
FA30: 1A 1A 26
FA33: 26 72 72          DFB    $1A,$1A,$26,$26,$72,$72
FA36: 88 C8             DFB    $88,$C8    (D) FORMAT
FA38: C4 CA 26
FA3B: 48 44 44          DFB    $C4,$CA,$26,$48,$44,$44
FA3E: A2 C8             DFB    $A2,$C8    (E) FORMAT
```

80

```
FA40: FF FF FF              DFB   $FF,$FF,$FF
FA43: 20 D0 F8  STEP        JSR   INSTDSP   DISASSEMBLE ONE INST
FA46: 68                    PLA             AT (PCL,H)
FA47: 85 2C                 STA   RTNL      ADJUST TO USER
FA49: 68                    PLA             STACK. SAVE
FA4A: 85 2D                 STA   RTNH      RTN ADR.
FA4C: A2 08                 LDX   #$08
FA4E: BD 10 FB  XQINIT      LDA   INITBL-1,X INIT XEO AREA
FA51: 95 3C                 STA   XQT,X
FA53: CA                    DEX
FA54: D0 F8                 BNE   XQINIT
FA56: A1 3A                 LDA   (PCL,X)   USER OPCODE BYTE
FA58: F0 42                 BEQ   XBRK      SPECIAL IF BREAK
FA5A: A4 2F                 LDY   LENGTH    LEN FROM DISASSEMBLY
FA5C: C9 20                 CMP   #$20
FA5E: F0 59                 BEQ   XJSR      HANDLE JSR, RTS, JMP,
FA60: C9 60                 CMP   #$60        JMP ( ), RTI SPECIAL
FA62: F0 45                 BEQ   XRTS
FA64: C9 4C                 CMP   #$4C
FA66: F0 5C                 BEQ   XJMP
FA68: C9 6C                 CMP   #$6C
FA6A: F0 59                 BEQ   XJMPAT
FA6C: C9 40                 CMP   #$40
FA6E: F0 35                 BEQ   XRTI
FA70: 29 1F                 AND   #$1F
FA72: 49 14                 EOR   #$14
FA74: C9 04                 CMP   #$04      COPY USER INST TO XEO AREA
FA76: F0 02                 BEQ   XQ2         WITH TRAILING NOPS
FA78: B1 3A    XQ1          LDA   (PCL),Y   CHANGE REL BRANCH
FA7A: 99 3C 00 XQ2          STA   XQTNZ,Y     DISP TO 4 FOR
FA7D: 88                    DEY               JMP TO BRANCH OR
FA7E: 10 F8                 BPL   XQ1         NBRANCH FROM XEO.
FA80: 20 3F FF              JSR   RESTORE   RESTORE USER REG CONTENTS.
FA83: 4C 3C 00              JMP   XQTNZ     XEQ USER OP FROM RAM
FA86: 85 45    IRQ          STA   ACC         (RETURN TO NBRANCH)
FA88: 68                    PLA
FA89: 48                    PHA             **IRQ HANDLER
FA8A: 0A                    ASL   A
FA8B: 0A                    ASL   A
FA8C: 0A                    ASL   A
FA8D: 30 03                 BMI   BREAK     TEST FOR BREAK
FA8F: 6C FE 03              JMP   (IRQLOC)  USER ROUTINE VECTOR IN RAM
FA92: 28       BREAK        PLP
FA93: 20 4C FF              JSR   SAV1      SAVE REG'S ON BREAK
FA96: 68                    PLA             INCLUDING PC
FA97: 85 3A                 STA   PCL
FA99: 68                    PLA
FA9A: 85 3B                 STA   PCH
FA9C: 20 82 F8  XBRK        JSR   INSDS1    PRINT USER PC.
FA9F: 20 DA FA              JSR   RGDSP1      AND REG'S
FAA2: 4C 65 FF              JMP   MON       GO TO MONITOR
FAA5: 18       XRTI         CLC
FAA6: 68                    PLA             SIMULATE RTI BY EXPECTING
FAA7: 85 48                 STA   STATUS      STATUS FROM STACK, THEN RTS
FAA9: 68       XRTS         PLA             RTS SIMULATION
FAAA: 85 3A                 STA   PCL         EXTRACT PC FROM STACK
FAAC: 68                    PLA             AND UPDATE PC BY 1 (LEN=0)
FAAD: 85 3B    PCINC2       STA   PCH
FAAF: A5 2F    PCINC3       LDA   LENGTH    UPDATE PC BY LEN
FAB1: 20 56 F9              JSR   PCADJ3
FAB4: 84 3B                 STY   PCH
FAB6: 18                    CLC
FAB7: 90 14                 BCC   NEWPCL
FAB9: 18       XJSR         CLC
FABA: 20 54 F9              JSR   PCADJ2    UPDATE PC AND PUSH
FABD: AA                    TAX             ONTO STACK FOR
FABE: 98                    TYA             JSR SIMULATE
FABF: 48                    PHA
FAC0: 8A                    TXA
FAC1: 48                    PHA
FAC2: A0 02                 LDY   #$02
FAC4: 18       XJMP         CLC
FAC5: B1 3A    XJMPAT       LDA   (PCL),Y
FAC7: AA                    TAX             LOAD PC FOR JMP,
FAC8: 88                    DEY             (JMP) SIMULATE.
FAC9: B1 3A                 LDA   (PCL),Y
FACB: 86 3B                 STX   PCH
FACD: 85 3A    NEWPCL       STA   PCL
FACF: B0 F3                 BCS   XJMP
FAD1: A5 2D    RTNJMP       LDA   RTNH
FAD3: 48                    PHA
FAD4: A5 2C                 LDA   RTNL
FAD6: 48                    PHA
FAD7: 20 8E FD  REGDSP      JSR   CROUT     DISPLAY USER REG
FADA: A9 45    RGDSP1       LDA   #ACC        CONTENTS WITH
FADC: 85 40                 STA   A3L         LABELS
```

81

```
FADE: A9 00           LDA  #ACC/256
FAE0: 85 41           STA  A3H
FAE2: A2 FB           LDX  #$FB
FAE4: A9 A0    RDSP1  LDA  #$A0
FAE6: 20 ED FD        JSR  COUT
FAE9: BD 1E FA        LDA  RTBL-$FB,X
FAEC: 20 ED FD        JSR  COUT
FAEF: A9 BD           LDA  #$BD
FAF1: 20 ED FD        JSR  COUT
FAF4: B5 4A           LDA  ACC+5,X
FAF6: 20 DA FD        JSR  PRBYTE
FAF9: E8              INX
FAFA: 30 E8           BMI  RDSP1
FAFC: 60              RTS
FAFD: 18       BRANCH CLC               BRANCH TAKEN,
FAFE: A0 01           LDY  #$01            ADD LEN+2 TO PC
FB00: B1 3A           LDA  (PCL),Y
FB02: 20 56 F9        JSR  PCADJ3
FB05: 85 3A           STA  PCL
FB07: 98              TYA
FB08: 38              SEC
FB09: B0 A2           BCS  PCINC2
FB0B: 20 4A FF NBRNCH JSR  SAVE          NORMAL RETURN AFTER
FB0E: 38              SEC                 XEQ USER OF
FB0F: B0 9E           BCS  PCINC3         GO UPDATE PC
FB11: EA       INITBL NOP
FB12: EA              NOP                 DUMMY FILL FOR
FB13: 4C 0B FB        JMP  NBRNCH         XEQ AREA
FB16: 4C FD FA        JMP  BRANCH
FB19: C1       RTBL   DFB  $C1
FB1A: D8              DFB  $D8
FB1B: D9              DFB  $D9
FB1C: D0              DFB  $D0
FB1D: D3              DFB  $D3
FB1E: AD 70 C0 PREAD  LDA  PTRIG         TRIGGER PADDLES
FB21: A0 00           LDY  #$00          INIT COUNT
FB23: EA              NOP                 COMPENSATE FOR 1ST COUNT
FB24: EA              NOP
FB25: BD 64 C0 PREAD2 LDA  PADDL0,X COUNT Y-REG EVERY
FB28: 10 04           BPL  RTS2D         12 USEC
FB2A: C8              INY
FB2B: D0 F8           BNE  PREAD2        EXIT AT 255 MAX
FB2D: 88              DEY
FB2E: 60       RTS2D  RTS
FB2F: A9 00    INIT   LDA  #$00          CLR STATUS FOR DEBUG
FB31: 85 48           STA  STATUS          SOFTWARE
FB33: AD 56 C0        LDA  LORES
FB36: AD 54 C0        LDA  LOWSCR        INIT VIDEO MODE
FB39: AD 51 C0 SETTXT LDA  TXTSET        SET FOR TEXT MODE
FB3C: A9 00           LDA  #$00            FULL SCREEN WINDOW
FB3E: F0 0B           BEQ  SETWND
FB40: AD 50 C0 SETGR  LDA  TXTCLR        SET FOR GRAPHICS MODE
FB43: AD 53 C0        LDA  MIXSET          LOWER 4 LINES AS
FB46: 20 36 F8        JSR  CLRTOP          TEXT WINDOW
FB49: A9 14           LDA  #$14
FB4B: 85 22    SETWND STA  WNDTOP        SET FOR 40 COL WINDOW
FB4D: A9 00           LDA  #$00            TOP IN A-REG,
FB4F: 85 20           STA  WNDLFT          BTTM AT LINE 24
FB51: A9 28           LDA  #$28
FB53: 85 21           STA  WNDWDTH
FB55: A9 18           LDA  #$18
FB57: 85 23           STA  WNDBTM          VTAB TO ROW 23
FB59: A9 17           LDA  #$17
FB5B: 85 25    TABV   STA  CV            VTABS TO ROW IN A-REG
FB5D: 4C 22 FC        JMP  VTAB
FB60: 20 A4 FB MULPM  JSR  MD1           ABS VAL OF AC AUX
FB63: A0 10    MUL    LDY  #$10          INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB65: A5 50    MUL2   LDA  ACL           ACX * AUX + XTND
FB67: 4A              LSR  A               TO AC, XTND
FB68: 90 0C           BCC  MUL4          IF NO CARRY,
FB6A: 18              CLC                 NO PARTIAL PROD.
FB6B: A2 FE           LDX  #$FE
FB6D: B5 54    MUL3   LDA  XTNDL+2,X ADD MPLCND (AUX)
FB6F: 75 56           ADC  AUXL+2,X    TO PARTIAL PROD
FB71: 95 54           STA  XTNDL+2,X      (XTND).
FB73: E8              INX
FB74: D0 F7           BNE  MUL3
FB76: A2 03    MUL4   LDX  #$03
FB78: 76       MUL5   DFB  #$76
FB79: 50              DFB  #$50
FB7A: CA              DEX
FB7B: 10 FB           BPL  MUL5
FB7D: 88              DEY
FB7E: D0 E5           BNE  MUL2
FB80: 60              RTS
```

```
FB81: 20 A4 FB  DIVPM    JSR  MD1       ABS VAL OF AC, AUX.
FB84: A0 10      DIV     LDY  #$10      INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB86: 06 50      DIV2    ASL  ACL
FB88: 26 51              ROL  ACH
FB8A: 26 52              ROL  XTNDL     YTND/AUX
FB8C: 26 53              ROL  XTNDH      TO AC.
FB8E: 38                 SEC
FB8F: A5 52              LDA  XTNDL
FB91: E5 54              SBC  AUXL      MOD TO XTND.
FB93: AA                 TAX
FB94: A5 53              LDA  XTNDH
FB96: E5 55              SBC  AUXH
FB98: 90 06              BCC  DIV3
FB9A: 86 52              STX  XTNDL
FB9C: 85 53              STA  XTNDH
FB9E: E6 50              INC  ACL
FBA0: 88       DIV3      DEY
FBA1: D0 E3              BNE  DIV2
FBA3: 60                 RTS
FBA4: A0 00     MD1      LDY  #$00      ABS VAL OF AC, AUX
FBA6: 84 2F              STY  SIGN       WITH RESULT SIGN
FBA8: A2 54              LDX  #AUXL      IN LSB OF SIGN.
FBAA: 20 AF FB           JSR  MD2
FBAD: A2 50              LDX  #ACL
FBAF: B5 01     MD2      LDA  LOC1,X     X SPECIFIES AC OR AUX
FBB1: 10 0D              BPL  MDRTS
FBB3: 38                 SEC
FBB4: 98       MD3       TYA
FBB5: F5 00              SBC  LOC0,X     COMPL SPECIFIED REG
FBB7: 95 00              STA  LOC0,X      IF NEG.
FBB9: 98                 TYA
FBBA: F5 01              SBC  LOC1,X
FBBC: 95 01              STA  LOC1,X
FBBE: E6 2F              INC  SIGN
FBC0: 60       MDRTS     RTS
FBC1: 48       BASCALC   PHA             CALC BASE ADR IN BASL,H
FBC2: 4A                 LSR  A           FOR GIVEN LINE NO.
FBC3: 29 03              AND  #$03       0<=LINE NO.<=$17
FBC5: 09 04              ORA  #$04       APG=000ABCDE, GENERATE
FBC7: 85 29              STA  BASH        BASH=000001CD
FBC9: 68                 PLA             AND
FBCA: 29 18              AND  #$18       BASL=EABAB000
FBCC: 90 02              BCC  BSCLC2
FBCE: 69 7F              ADC  #$7F
FBD0: 85 28     BSCLC2   STA  BASL
FBD2: 0A                 ASL  A
FBD3: 0A                 ASL  A
FBD4: 05 28              ORA  BASL
FBD6: 85 28              STA  BASL
FBD8: 60                 RTS
FBD9: C9 87     BELL1    CMP  #$87       BELL CHAR? (CNTRL-G)
FBDB: D0 12              BNE  RTS2B       NO,RETURN
FBDD: A9 40              LDA  #$40       DELAY .01 SECONDS
FBDF: 20 A8 FC           JSR  WAIT
FBE2: A0 C0              LDY  #$C0
FBE4: A9 0C     BELL2    LDA  #$0C       TOGGLE SPEAKER AT
FBE6: 20 A8 FC           JSR  WAIT        1 KHZ FOR .1 SEC.
FBE9: AD 30 C0           LDA  SPKR
FBEC: 88                 DEY
FBED: D0 F5              BNE  BELL2
FBEF: 60       RTS2B     RTS
FBF0: A4 24     STOADV   LDY  CH        CURSER H INDEX TO Y-REG
FBF2: 91 28              STA  (BASL),Y  STOR CHAR IN LINE
FBF4: E6 24     ADVANCE  INC  CH        INCREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FBF6: A5 24              LDA  CH         (MOVE RIGHT)
FBF8: C5 21              CMP  WNDWDTH   BEYOND WINDOW WIDTH?
FBFA: B0 66              BCS  CR         YES UP TO NEXT LINE
FBFC: 60       RTS3      RTS            NO,RETURN
FBFD: C9 A0     VIDOUT   CMP  #$A0      CONTROL CHAR?
FBFF: B0 EF              BCS  STOADV     NO,OUTPUT IT.
FC01: A8                 TAY            INVERSE VIDEO?
FC02: 10 EC              BPL  STOADV     YES, OUTPUT IT.
FC04: C9 8D              CMP  #$8D      CR?
FC06: F0 5A              BEQ  CR         YES.
FC08: C9 8A              CMP  #$8A      LINE FEED?
FC0A: F0 5A              BEQ  LF         IF SO, DO IT.
FC0C: C9 88              CMP  #$88      BACK SPACE? (CNTRL-H)
FC0E: D0 C9              BNE  BELL1      NO, CHECK FOR BELL.
FC10: C6 24     BS       DEC  CH        DECREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FC12: 10 E8              BPL  RTS3      IF POS, OK. ELSE MOVE UP
FC14: A5 21              LDA  WNDWDTH   SET CH TO WNDWDTH-1
FC16: 85 24              STA  CH
FC18: C6 24              DEC  CH         (RIGHTMOST SCREEN POS)
FC1A: A5 22     UP       LDA  WNDTOP    CURSER V INDEX
FC1C: C5 25              CMP  CV
```

```
FC1E: B0 0B              BCS  RTS4      IF TOP LINE THEN RETURN
FC20: C6 25              DEC  CV        DECR CURSER V-INDEX
FC22: A5 25      VTAB    LDA  CV        GET CURSER V-INDEX
FC24: 20 C1 FB   VTABZ   JSR  PASCALC   GENERATE BASE ADDR
FC27: 65 20              ADC  WNDLFT    ADD WINDOW LEFT INDEX
FC29: 85 28              STA  BASL      TO BASL
FC2B: 60         RTS4    RTS
FC2C: 49 C0      ESC1    EOR  #$C0      ESC?
FC2E: F0 28              BEQ  HOME      IF SO, DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30: 69 FD              ADC  #$FD      ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32: 90 C0              BCC  ADVANCE   A, ADVANCE
FC34: F0 DA              BEQ  BS        B, BACKSPACE
FC36: 69 FD              ADC  #$FD      ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38: 90 2C              BCC  LF        C, DOWN
FC3A: F0 DE              BEQ  UP        D, GO UP
FC3C: 69 FD              ADC  #$FD      ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E: 90 5C              BCC  CLREOL    E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40: D0 E9              BNE  RTS4      NOT F, RETURN
FC42: A4 24      CLREOP  LDY  CH        CURSOR H TO Y INDEX
FC44: A5 25              LDA  CV        CURSOR V TO A-REGISTER
FC46: 48         CLEOP1  PHA            SAVE CURRENT LINE ON STK
FC47: 20 24 FC           JSR  VTABZ     CALC BASE ADDRESS
FC4A: 20 9E FC           JSR  CLEOLZ    CLEAR TO EOL, SET CARRY
FC4D: A0 00              LDY  #$00      CLEAR FROM H INDEX=0 FOR REST
FC4F: 68                 PLA            INCREMENT CURRENT LINE
FC50: 69 00              ADC  #$00      (CARRY IS SET)
FC52: C5 23              CMP  WNDBTM    DONE TO BOTTOM OF WINDOW?
FC54: 90 F0              BCC  CLEOP1    NO, KEEP CLEARING LINES
FC56: B0 CA              BCS  VTAB      YES, TAB TO CURRENT LINE
FC58: A5 22      HOME    LDA  WNDTOP    INIT CURSOR V
FC5A: 85 25              STA  CV        AND H-INDICES
FC5C: A0 00              LDY  #$00
FC5E: 84 24              STY  CH        THEN CLEAR TO END OF PAGE
FC60: F0 E4              BEQ  CLEOP1
FC62: A9 00      CR      LDA  #$00      CURSOR TO LEFT OF INDEX
FC64: 85 24              STA  CH        (SET CURSOR H=0)
FC66: E6 25      LF      INC  CV        INCR CURSOR V(DOWN 1 LINE)
FC68: A5 25              LDA  CV
FC6A: C5 23              CMP  WNDBTM    OFF SCREEN?
FC6C: 90 B6              BCC  VTABZ     NO, SET BASE ADDR
FC6E: C6 25              DEC  CV        DECR CURSOR V(BACK TO BOTTOM LINE)
FC70: A5 22      SCROLL  LDA  WNDTOP    START AT TOP OF SCRL WNDW
FC72: 48                 PHA
FC73: 20 24 FC           JSR  VTABZ     GENERATE BASE ADDRESS
FC76: A5 28      SCRL1   LDA  BASL      COPY BASL,H
FC78: 85 2A              STA  BAS2L         TO BAS2L,H
FC7A: A5 29              LDA  BASH
FC7C: 85 2B              STA  BAS2H
FC7E: A4 21              LDY  WNDWDTH   INIT Y TO RIGHTMOST INDEX
FC80: 88                 DEY            OF SCROLLING WINDOW
FC81: 68                 PLA
FC82: 69 01              ADC  #$01      INCR LINE NUMBER
FC84: C5 23              CMP  WNDBTM    DONE?
FC86: B0 0D              BCS  SCRL3     YES, FINISH
FC88: 48                 PHA
FC89: 20 24 FC           JSR  VTABZ     FORM BASL,H (BASE ADDR)
FC8C: B1 28      SCRL2   LDA  (BASL),Y  MOVE A CHR UP ON LINE
FC8E: 91 2A              STA  (BAS2L),Y
FC90: 88                 DEY            NEXT CHAR OF LINE
FC91: 10 F9              BPL  SCRL2
FC93: 30 E1              BMI  SCRL1     NEXT LINE
FC95: A0 00      SCRL3   LDY  #$00      CLEAR BOTTOM LINE
FC97: 20 9E FC           JSR  CLEOLZ    GET BASE ADDR FOR BOTTOM LINE
FC9A: B0 86              BCS  VTAB      CARRY IS SET
FC9C: A4 24      CLREOL  LDY  CH        CURSOR H INDEX
FC9E: A9 A0      CLEOLZ  LDA  #$A0
FCA0: 91 28      CLEOL2  STA  (BASL),Y  STORE BLANKS FROM 'HERE'
FCA2: C8                 INY            TO END OF LINES (WNDWDTH)
FCA3: C4 21              CPY  WNDWDTH
FCA5: 90 F9              BCC  CLEOL2
FCA7: 60                 RTS
FCA8: 38         WAIT    SEC
FCA9: 48         WAIT2   PHA
FCAA: E9 01      WAIT3   SBC  #$01
FCAC: D0 FC              BNE  WAIT3     1.0204 USEC
FCAE: 68                 PLA            (13+2712*A+512*A*A)
FCAF: E9 01              SBC  #$01
FCB1: D0 F6              BNE  WAIT2
FCB3: 60                 RTS
FCB4: E6 42      NXTA4   INC  A4L       INCR 2-BYTE A4
FCB6: D0 02              BNE  NXTA1     AND A1
FCB8: E6 43              INC  A4H
FCBA: A5 3C      NXTA1   LDA  A1L       INCR 2-BYTE A1.
FCBC: C5 3E              CMP  A2L
FCBE: A5 3D              LDA  A1H       AND COMPARE TO A2
```

84

```
FCC0: E5 3F            SBC  A2H
FCC2: E6 3C            INC  A1L         (CARRY SET IF >=)
FCC4: D0 02            BNE  RTS4B
FCC6: E6 3D            INC  A1H
FCC8: 60       RTS4B   RTS
FCC9: A0 48    HEADR   LDY  #$4B        WRITE A*256 'LONG 1'
FCCB: 20 DB FC         JSR  ZERDLY       HALF CYCLES
FCCE: D0 F9            BNE  HEADR        (650 USEC EACH )
FCD0: 69 FE            ADC  #$FE
FCD2: B0 F5            BCS  HEADR       THEN A 'SHORT 0'
FCD4: A0 21            LDY  #$21         (400 USEC)
FCD6: 20 DB FC WRBIT   JSR  ZERDLY      WRITE TWO HALF CYCLES
FCD9: C8              INY              OF 250 USEC ('0')
FCDA: C8              INY              OR 500 USEC ('0')
FCDB: 88       ZERDLY  DEY
FCDC: D0 FD            BNE  ZERDLY
FCDE: 90 05            BCC  WRTAPE       Y IS COUNT FOR
FCE0: A0 32            LDY  #$32         TIMING LOOP
FCE2: 88       ONEDLY  DEY
FCE3: D0 FD            BNE  ONEDLY
FCE5: AC 20 C0 WRTAPE  LDY  TAPEOUT
FCE8: A0 2C            LDY  #$2C
FCEA: CA              DEX
FCEB: 60              RTS
FCEC: A2 08    RDBYTE  LDX  #$08        8 BITS TO READ
FCEE: 48       RDBYT2  PHA              READ TWO TRANSITIONS
FCEF: 20 FA FC         JSR  RD2BIT       (FIND EDGE)
FCF2: 68              PLA
FCF3: 2A              ROL  A           NEXT BIT
FCF4: A0 3A            LDY  #$3A        COUNT FOR SAMPLES
FCF6: CA              DEX
FCF7: D0 F5            BNE  RDBYT2
FCF9: 60              RTS
FCFA: 20 FD FC RD2BIT  JSR  RDBIT
FCFD: 88       RDBIT   DEY              DECR Y UNTIL
FCFE: AD 60 C0         LDA  TAPEIN       TAPE TRANSITION
FD01: 45 2F            EOR  LASTIN
FD03: 10 F8            BPL  RDBIT
FD05: 45 2F            EOR  LASTIN
FD07: 85 2F            STA  LASTIN
FD09: C0 80            CPY  #$80        SET CARRY ON Y-REG.
FD0B: 60              RTS
FD0C: A4 24    RDKEY   LDY  CH
FD0E: B1 28            LDA  (BASL),Y SET SCREEN TO FLASH
FD10: 48              PHA
FD11: 29 3F            AND  #$3F
FD13: 09 40            ORA  #$40
FD15: 91 28            STA  (BASL),Y
FD17: 68              PLA
FD18: 6C 38 00         JMP  (KSWL)   GO TO USER KEY-IN
FD1B: E6 4E    KEYIN   INC  RNDL
FD1D: D0 02            BNE  KEYIN2   INCR RND NUMBER
FD1F: E6 4F            INC  RNDH
FD21: 2C 00 C0 KEYIN2  BIT  KBD      KEY DOWN?
FD24: 10 F5            BPL  KEYIN        LOOP
FD26: 91 28            STA  (BASL),Y REPLACE FLASHING SCREEN
FD28: AD 00 C0         LDA  KBD      GET KEYCODE
FD2B: 2C 10 C0         BIT  KBDSTRB  CLR KEY STROBE
FD2E: 60              RTS
FD2F: 20 0C FD ESC     JSR  RDKEY    GET KEYCODE
FD32: 20 2C FC         JSR  ESC1     HANDLE ESC FUNC.
FD35: 20 0C FD RDCHAR  JSR  RDKEY    READ KEY
FD38: C9 9B            CMP  #$9B     ESC?
FD3A: F0 F3            BEQ  ESC          YES, DON'T RETURN
FD3C: 60              RTS
FD3D: A5 32    NOTCR   LDA  INVFLG
FD3F: 48              PHA
FD40: A9 FF            LDA  #$FF
FD42: 85 32            STA  INVFLG   ECHO USER LINE
FD44: BD 00 02         LDA  IN,X         NON INVERSE
FD47: 20 ED FD         JSR  COUT
FD4A: 68              PLA
FD4B: 85 32            STA  INVFLG
FD4D: BD 00 02         LDA  IN,X
FD50: C9 88            CMP  #$88     CHECK FOR EDIT KEYS
FD52: F0 1D            BEQ  BCKSPC     BS, CTRL-X.
FD54: C9 98            CMP  #$98
FD56: F0 0A            BEQ  CANCEL
FD58: E0 F8            CPX  #$F8     MARGIN?
FD5A: 90 03            BCC  NOTCR1
FD5C: 20 3A FF         JSR  BELL         YES, SOUND BELL
FD5F: E8       NOTCR1  INX              ADVANCE INPUT INDEX
FD60: D0 13            BNE  NXTCHAR
FD62: A9 DC    CANCEL  LDA  #$DC     BACKSLASH AFTER CANCELLED LINE
FD64: 20 ED FD         JSR  COUT
```

```
FD67: 20 8E FD  GETLNZ  JSR  CROUT    OUTPUT CR
FD6A: A5 33      GETLN   LDA  PROMPT
FD6C: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT     OUTPUT PROMPT CHAR
FD6F: A2 01              LDX  #$01     INIT INPUT INDEX
FD71: 8A         BCKSPC  TXA           WILL BACKSPACE TO 0
FD72: F0 F3              BEQ  GETLNZ
FD74: CA                 DEX
FD75: 20 35 FD  NXTCHAR  JSR  RDCHAR
FD78: C9 95              CMP  #PICK    USE SCREEN CHAR
FD7A: D0 02              BNE  CAPTST    FOR CTRL-U
FD7C: B1 28              LDA  (BASL),Y
FD7E: C9 E0      CAPTST  CMP  #$E0
FD80: 90 02              BCC  ADDINP   CONVERT TO CAPS
FD82: 29 DF              AND  #$DF
FD84: 9D 00 02  ADDINP  STA  IN,X     ADD TO INPUT BUF
FD87: C9 8D              CMP  #$8D
FD89: D0 B2              BNE  NOTCR
FD8B: 20 9C FC           JSR  CLREOL   CLR TO EOL IF CR
FD8E: A9 8D      CROUT   LDA  #$8D
FD90: D0 5B              BNE  COUT
FD92: A4 3D      PRA1    LDY  A1H      PRINT CR,A1 IN HEX
FD94: A6 3C              LDX  A1L
FD96: 20 8E FD  PRYX2   JSR  CROUT
FD99: 20 40 F9           JSR  PRNTYX
FD9C: A0 00              LDY  #$00
FD9E: A9 AD              LDA  #$AD     PRINT '-'
FDA0: 4C ED FD           JMP  COUT
FDA3: A5 3C      XAM8    LDA  A1L
FDA5: 09 07              ORA  #$07     SET TO FINISH AT
FDA7: 85 3E              STA  A2L        MOD 8=7
FDA9: A5 3D              LDA  A1H
FDAB: 85 3F              STA  A2H
FDAD: A5 3C      MOD8CHK LDA  A1L
FDAF: 29 07              AND  #$07
FDB1: D0 03              BNE  DATAOUT
FDB3: 20 92 FD  XAM     JSR  PRA1
FDB6: A9 A0      DATAOUT LDA  #$A0
FDB8: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT     OUTPUT BLANK
FDBB: B1 3C              LDA  (A1L),Y
FDBD: 20 DA FD           JSR  PRBYTE   OUTPUT BYTE IN HEX
FDC0: 20 BA FC           JSR  NXTA1
FDC3: 90 E8              BCC  MODBCHK  CHECK IF TIME TO,
FDC5: 60         RTS4C   RTS           PRINT ADDR
FDC6: 4A         XAMPM   LSR  A        DETERMINE IF MON
FDC7: 90 EA              BCC  XAM        MODE IS XAM
FDC9: 4A                 LSR  A          ADD, OR SUB
FDCA: 4A                 LSR  A
FDCB: A5 3E              LDA  A2L
FDCD: 90 02              BCC  ADD
FDCF: 49 FF              EOR  #$FF     SUB: FORM 2'S COMPLEMENT
FDD1: 65 3C      ADD     ADC  A1L
FDD3: 48                 PHA
FDD4: A9 BD              LDA  #$BD
FDD6: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT     PRINT '=', THEN RESULT
FDD9: 68                 PLA
FDDA: 48         PRBYTE  PHA           PRINT BYTE AS 2 HEX
FDDB: 4A                 LSR  A          DIGITS, DESTROYS A-REG
FDDC: 4A                 LSR  A
FDDD: 4A                 LSR  A
FDDE: 4A                 LSR  A
FDDF: 20 E5 FD           JSR  PRHEXZ
FDE2: 68                 PLA
FDE3: 29 0F      PRHEX   AND  #$0F     PRINT HEX DIG IN A-REG
FDE5: 09 B0      PRHEXZ  ORA  #$B0       LSB'S
FDE7: C9 BA              CMP  #$BA
FDE9: 90 02              BCC  COUT
FDEB: 69 06              ADC  #$06
FDED: 6C 36 00  COUT    JMP  (CSWL)    VECTOR TO USER OUTPUT ROUTINE
FDF0: C9 A0      COUT1   CMP  #$A0
FDF2: 90 02              BCC  COUTZ    DON'T OUTPUT CTRL'S INVERSE
FDF4: 25 32              AND  INVFLG   MASK WITH INVERSE FLAG
FDF6: 84 35      COUTZ   STY  YSAV1    SAV Y-REG
FDF8: 48                 PHA           SAV A-REG
FDF9: 20 FD FB           JSR  VIDOUT   OUTPUT A-REG AS ASCII
FDFC: 68                 PLA           RESTORE A-REG
FDFD: A4 35              LDY  YSAV1      AND Y-REG
FDFF: 60                 RTS           THEN RETURN
FE00: C6 34      BL1     DEC  YSAV
FE02: F0 9F              BEQ  XAM8
FE04: CA         BLANK   DEX           BLANK TO MON
FE05: D0 16              BNE  SETMDZ   AFTER BLANK
FE07: C9 BA              CMP  #$BA     DATA STORE MODE?
FE09: D0 BB              BNE  XAMPM      NO, XAM, ADD OR SUB
FE0B: 85 31      STOR    STA  MODE     KEEP IN STORE MODE
FE0D: A5 3E              LDA  A2L
```

86

```
FE0F: 91 40              STA   (A3L),Y   STORE AS LOW BYTE AS (A3)
FE11: E6 40              INC   A3L
FE13: D0 02              BNE   RTS5      INCR A3, RETURN
FE15: E6 41              INC   A3H
FE17: 60         RTS5    RTS
FE18: A4 34      SETMODE LDY   YSAV      SAVE CONVERTED ':', '+',
FE1A: B9 FF 01          LDA   IN-1,Y    '-', '.' AS MODE.
FE1D: 85 31      SETMDZ  STA   MODE
FE1F: 60                 RTS
FE20: A2 01      LT      LDX   #$01
FE22: B5 3E      LT2     LDA   A2L,X     COPY A2 (2 BYTES) TO
FE24: 95 42              STA   A4L,X       A4 AND A5
FE26: 95 44              STA   A5L,X
FE28: CA                 DEX
FE29: 10 F7              BPL   LT2
FE2B: 60                 RTS
FE2C: B1 3C      MOVE    LDA   (A1L),Y   MOVE (A1 TO A2) TO
FE2E: 91 42              STA   (A4L),Y     (A4)
FE30: 20 B4 FC          JSR   NXTA4
FE33: 90 F7              BCC   MOVE
FE35: 60                 RTS
FE36: B1 3C      VFY     LDA   (A1L),Y   VERIFY (A1 TO A2) WITH
FE38: D1 42              CMP   (A4L),Y     (A4)
FE3A: F0 1C              BEQ   VFYOK
FE3C: 20 92 FD          JSR   PRA1
FE3F: B1 3C              LDA   (A1L),Y
FE41: 20 DA FD          JSR   PRBYTE
FE44: A9 A0              LDA   #$A0
FE46: 20 ED FD          JSR   COUT
FE49: A9 A8              LDA   #$A8
FE4B: 20 ED FD          JSR   COUT
FE4E: B1 42              LDA   (A4L),Y
FE50: 20 DA FD          JSR   PRBYTE
FE53: A9 A9              LDA   #$A9
FE55: 20 ED FD          JSR   COUT
FE58: 20 B4 FC  VFYOK   JSR   NXTA4
FE5B: 90 D9              BCC   VFY
FE5D: 60                 RTS
FE5E: 20 75 FE  LIST    JSR   A1PC      MOVE A1 (2 BYTES) TO
FE61: A9 14              LDA   #$14        PC IF SPEC'D AND
FE63: 48         LIST2   PHA               DISSEMBLE 20 INSTRS
FE64: 20 D0 F8          JSR   INSTDSP
FE67: 20 53 F9          JSR   PCADJ     ADJUST PC EACH INSTR
FE6A: 85 3A              STA   PCL
FE6C: 84 3B              STY   PCH
FE6E: 68                 PLA
FE6F: 38                 SEC
FE70: E9 01              SBC   #$01      NEXT OF 20 INSTRS
FE72: D0 EF              BNE   LIST2
FE74: 60                 RTS
FE75: 8A         A1PC    TXA             IF USER SPEC'D ADR
FE76: F0 07              BEQ   A1PCRTS     COPY FROM A1 TO PC
FE78: B5 3C      A1PCLP  LDA   A1L,X
FE7A: 95 3A              STA   PCL,X
FE7C: CA                 DEX
FE7D: 10 F9              BPL   A1PCLP
FE7F: 60         A1PCRTS RTS
FE80: A0 3F      SETINV  LDY   #$3F      SET FOR INVERSE VID
FE82: D0 02              BNE   SETIFLG     VIA COUT1
FE84: A0 FF      SETNORM LDY   #$FF      SET FOR NORMAL VID
FE86: 84 32      SETIFLG STY   INVFLG
FE88: 60                 RTS
FE89: A9 00      SETKBD  LDA   #$00      SIMULATE PORT #0 INPUT
FE8B: 85 3E      INPORT  STA   A2L         SPECIFIED (KEYIN ROUTINE)
FE8D: A2 38      INPRT   LDX   #KSWL
FE8F: A0 1B              LDY   #KEYIN
FE91: D0 08              BNE   IOPRT
FE93: A9 00      SETVID  LDA   #$00      SIMULATE PORT #0 OUTPUT
FE95: 85 3E      OUTPORT STA   A2L         SPECIFIED (COUT1 ROUTINE)
FE97: A2 36      OUTPRT  LDX   #CSWL
FE99: A0 F0              LDY   #COUT1
FE9B: A5 3E      IOPRT   LDA   A2L       SET RAM IN/OUT VECTORS
FE9D: 29 0F              AND   #$0F
FE9F: F0 06              BEQ   IOPRT1
FEA1: 09 C0              ORA   #IOADR/256
FEA3: A0 00              LDY   #$00
FEA5: F0 02              BEQ   IOPRT2
FEA7: A9 FD      IOPRT1  LDA   #COUT1/256
FEA9: 94 00      IOPRT2  STY   LOC0,X
FEAB: 95 01              STA   LOC1,X
FEAD: 60                 RTS
FEAE: EA                 NOP
FEAF: EA                 NOP
FEB0: 4C 00 E0  XBASIC  JMP   BASIC     TO BASIC WITH SCRATCH
FEB3: 4C 03 E0  BASCONT JMP   BASIC2    CONTINUE BASIC
```

```
FEB6: 20 75 FE  GO       JSR  A1PC      ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEB9: 20 3F FF           JSR  RESTORE   RESTORE META REGS
FEBC: 6C 3A 00           JMP  (PCL)     GO TO USER SUBR
FEBF: 4C D7 FA  REGZ     JMP  REGDSP    TO REG DISPLAY
FEC2: C6 34     TRACE    DEC  YSAV
FEC4: 20 75 FE  STEPZ    JSR  A1PC      ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEC7: 4C 43 FA           JMP  STEP      TAKE ONE STEP
FECA: 4C F8 03  USR      JMP  USRADR    TO USR SUBR AT USRADR
FECD: A9 40     WRITE    LDA  #$40
FECF: 20 C9 FC           JSR  HEADR     WRITE 10-SEC HEADER
FED2: A0 27              LDY  #$27
FED4: A2 00     WR1      LDX  #$00
FED6: 41 3C              EOR  (A1L,X)
FED8: 48                 PHA
FED9: A1 3C              LDA  (A1L,X)
FEDB: 20 ED FE           JSR  WRBYTE
FEDE: 20 BA FC           JSR  NXTA1
FEE1: A0 1D              LDY  #$1D
FEE3: 68                 PLA
FEE4: 90 EE              BCC  WR1
FEE6: A0 22              LDY  #$22
FEE8: 20 ED FE           JSR  WRBYTE
FEEB: F0 4C              BEQ  BELL
FEED: A2 10     WRBYTE   LDX  #$10
FEEF: 0A       WRBYT2    ASL  A
FEF0: 20 D6 FC           JSR  WRBIT
FEF3: D0 FA              BNE  WRBYT2
FEF5: 60                 RTS
FEF6: 20 00 FE  CRMON    JSR  BL1       HANDLE CR AS BLANK
FEF9: 68                 PLA            THEN POP STACK
FEFA: 68                 PLA            AND RTN TO MON
FEFB: D0 6C              BNE  MONZ
FEFD: 20 FA FC  READ     JSR  RD2BIT    FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF00: A9 16              LDA  #$16
FF02: 20 C9 FC           JSR  HEADR     DELAY 3.5 SECONDS
FF05: 85 2E              STA  CHKSUM    INIT CHKSUM=$FF
FF07: 20 FA FC           JSR  RD2BIT    FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF0A: A0 24     RD2      LDY  #$24      LOOK FOR SYNC BIT
FF0C: 20 FD FC           JSR  RDBIT        (SHORT 0)
FF0F: B0 F9              BCS  RD2          LOOP UNTIL FOUND
FF11: 20 FD FC           JSR  RDBIT     SKIP SECOND SYNC H-CYCLE
FF14: A0 3B              LDY  #$3B      INDEX FOR 0/1 TEST
FF16: 20 EC FC  RD3      JSR  RDBYTE    READ A BYTE
FF19: 81 3C              STA  (A1L,X)   STORE AT (A1)
FF1B: 45 2E              EOR  CHKSUM
FF1D: 85 2E              STA  CHKSUM    UPDATE RUNNING CHKSUM
FF1F: 20 BA FC           JSR  NXTA1     INCR A1, COMPARE TO A2
FF22: A0 35              LDY  #$35      COMPENSATE 0/1 INDEX
FF24: 90 F0              BCC  RD3       LOOP UNTIL DONE
FF26: 20 EC FC           JSR  RDBYTE    READ CHKSUM BYTE
FF29: C5 2E              CMP  CHKSUM
FF2B: F0 0D              BEQ  BELL      GOOD, SOUND BELL AND RETURN
FF2D: A9 C5     PRERR    LDA  #$C5
FF2F: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT      PRINT "ERR", THEN BELL
FF32: A9 D2              LDA  #$D2
FF34: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT
FF37: 20 ED FD           JSR  COUT
FF3A: A9 87     BELL     LDA  #$87      OUTPUT BELL AND RETURN
FF3C: 4C ED FD           JMP  COUT
FF3F: A5 48     RESTORE  LDA  STATUS    RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF41: 48                 PHA            USED BY DEBUG SOFTWARE
FF42: A5 45              LDA  ACC
FF44: A6 46     RESTR1   LDX  XREG
FF46: A4 47              LDY  YREG
FF48: 28                 PLP
FF49: 60                 RTS
FF4A: 85 45     SAVE     STA  ACC       SAVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF4C: 86 46     SAV1     STX  XREG
FF4E: 84 47              STY  YREG
FF50: 08                 PHP
FF51: 68                 PLA
FF52: 85 48              STA  STATUS
FF54: BA                 TSX
FF55: 86 49              STX  SPNT
FF57: D8                 CLD
FF58: 60                 RTS
FF59: 20 84 FE  RESET    JSR  SETNORM   SET SCREEN MODE
FF5C: 20 2F FB           JSR  INIT      AND INIT KBD/SCREEN
FF5F: 20 93 FE           JSR  SETVID    AS I/O DEV'S
FF62: 20 89 FE           JSR  SETKBD
FF65: D8       MON       CLD            MUST SET HEX MODE!
FF66: 20 3A FF           JSR  BELL
FF69: A9 AA     MONZ     LDA  #$AA      '*' PROMPT FOR MON
FF6B: 85 33              STA  PROMPT
FF6D: 20 67 FD           JSR  GETLNZ    READ A LINE
```

```
FF70: 20 C7 FF          JSR   ZMODE      CLEAR MON MODE, SCAN IDX
FF73: 20 A7 FF  NXTITM  JSR   GETNUM     GET ITEM, NON-HEX
FF76: 84 34              STY   YSAV         CHAR IN A-REG
FF78: A0 17              LDY   #$17         X-REG=0 IF NO HEX INPUT
FF7A: 88        CHRSRCH  DEY
FF7B: 30 E8              BMI   MON        NOT FOUND, GO TO MON
FF7D: D9 CC FF          CMP   CHRTBL,Y   FIND CMND CHAR IN TBL
FF80: D0 F8              BNE   CHRSRCH
FF82: 20 BE FF          JSR   TOSUB      FOUND, CALL CORRESPONDING
FF85: A4 34              LDY   YSAV         SUBROUTINE
FF87: 4C 73 FF          JMP   NXTITM
FF8A: A2 03     DIG     LDX   #$03
FF8C: 0A                ASL   A
FF8D: 0A                ASL   A
FF8E: 0A                ASL   A          GOT HEX DIG,
FF8F: 0A                ASL   A            SHIFT INTO A2
FF90: 0A        NXTBIT  ASL   A
FF91: 26 3E              ROL   A2L
FF93: 26 3F              ROL   A2H
FF95: CA                DEX              LEAVE X=$FF IF DIG
FF96: 10 F8              BPL   NXTBIT
FF98: A5 31     NXTBAS  LDA   MODE
FF9A: D0 06              BNE   NXTBS2     IF MODE IS ZERO
FF9C: B5 3F              LDA   A2H,X        THEN COPY A2 TO
FF9E: 95 3D              STA   A1H,X        A1 AND A3
FFA0: 95 41              STA   A3H,X
FFA2: E8        NXTBS2  INX
FFA3: F0 F3              BEQ   NXTBAS
FFA5: D0 06              BNE   NXTCHR
FFA7: A2 00     GETNUM  LDX   #$00       CLEAR A2
FFA9: 86 3E              STX   A2L
FFAB: 86 3F              STX   A2H
FFAD: B9 00 02  NXTCHR  LDA   IN,Y       GET CHAR
FFB0: C8                INY
FFB1: 49 B0              EOR   #$B0
FFB3: C9 0A              CMP   #$0A
FFB5: 90 D3              BCC   DIG        IF HEX DIG, THEN
FFB7: 69 88              ADC   #$88
FFB9: C9 FA              CMP   #$FA
FFBB: B0 CD              BCS   DIG
FFBD: 60                RTS
FFBE: A9 FE     TOSUB   LDA   #CO/256    PUSH HIGH-ORDER
FFC0: 48                PHA              SUBR ADR ON STK
FFC1: B9 E3 FF          LDA   SUBTBL,Y PUSH LOW-ORDER
FFC4: 48                PHA              SUBR ADR ON STK
FFC5: A5 31              LDA   MODE
FFC7: A0 00     ZMODE   LDY   #$00       CLR MODE, OLD MODE
FFC9: 84 31              STY   MODE         TO A-REG
FFCB: 60        CHRTBL  RTS              GO TO SUBR VIA RTS
FFCC: BC        CHRTBL  DFB   $BC        F("CTRL-C")
FFCD: B2                DFB   $B2        F("CTRL-Y")
FFCE: BE                DFB   $BE        F("CTRL-E")
FFCF: ED                DFB   $ED        F("T")
FFD0: EF                DFB   $EF        F("V")
FFD1: C4                DFB   $C4        F("CTRL-K")
FFD2: EC                DFB   $EC        F("S")
FFD3: A9                DFB   $A9        F("CTRL-P")
FFD4: BB                DFB   $BB        F("CTRL-B")
FFD5: A6                DFB   $A6        F("-")
FFD6: A4                DFB   $A4        F("+")
FFD7: 06                DFB   $06        F("M")   (F=EX-OR $B0+$89)
FFD8: 95                DFB   $95        F("<")
FFD9: 07                DFB   $07        F("N")
FFDA: 02                DFB   $02        F("I")
FFDB: 05                DFB   $05        F("L")
FFDC: F0                DFB   $F0        F("W")
FFDD: 00                DFB   $00        F("G")
FFDE: EB                DFB   $EB        F("R")
FFDF: 93                DFB   $93        F(":")
FFE0: A7                DFB   $A7        F(".")
FFE1: C6                DFB   $C6        F("CR")
FFE2: 99                DFB   $99        F(BLANK)
FFE3: B2        SUBTBL  DFB   #BASCONT-1
FFE4: C9                DFB   #USR-1
FFE5: BE                DFB   #REGZ-1
FFE6: C1                DFB   #TRACE-1
FFE7: 35                DFB   #VFY-1
FFE8: 8C                DFB   #INPRT-1
FFE9: C3                DFB   #STEPZ-1
FFEA: 96                DFB   #OUTPRT-1
FFEB: AF                DFB   #XPASIC-1
FFEC: 17                DFB   #SETMODE-1
FFED: 17                DFB   #SETMODE-1
FFEE: 2B                DFB   #MOVE-1
FFEF: 1F                DFB   #LT-1
```

```
FFF0: 83            DFB    #SETNORM-1
FFF1: 7F            DFB    #SETINV-1
FFF2: 5D            DFB    #LIST-1
FFF3: CC            DFB    #WRITE-1
FFF4: E5            DFB    #GO-1
FFF5: FC            DFB    #READ-1
FFF6: 17            DFB    #SETMODE-1
FFF7: 17            DFB    #SETMODE-1
FFF8: F5            DFB    #CRMON-1
FFF9: 03            DFB    #BLANK-1
FFFA: FB            DFB    #NMI       NMI VECTOR
FFFB: 03            DFB    #NMI/256
FFFC: 59            DFB    #RESET     RESET VECTOR
FFFD: FF            DFB    #RESET/256
FFFE: 86            DFB    #IRQ       IRQ VECTOR
FFFF: FA            DFB    #IRQ/256
              XQTNZ EQU    $3C
```

```
                    ************************
                    *                      *
                    *       APPLE-II        *
                    *    MINI-ASSEMBLER     *
                    *                      *
                    *   COPYRIGHT 1977 BY   *
                    * APPLE COMPUTER INC.   *
                    *                      *
                    * ALL RIGHTS RESERVED  *
                    *                      *
                    *      S. WOZNIAK       *
                    *       A. BAUM         *
                    *                      *
                    ************************
                    TITLE "APPLE-II MINI-ASSEMBLER"
           FORMAT    EPZ    $2E
           LENGTH    EPZ    $2F
           MODE      EPZ    $31
           PROMPT    EPZ    $33
           YSAV      EPZ    $34
           L         EPZ    $35
           PCL       EPZ    $3A
           PCH       EPZ    $3B
           A1H       EPZ    $3D
           A2L       EPZ    $3E
           A2H       EPZ    $3F
           A4L       EPZ    $42
           A4H       EPZ    $43
           FMT       EPZ    $44
           IN        EQU    $200
           INSDS2    EQU    $F88E
           INSTDSP   EQU    $F8D0
           PRBL2     EQU    $F94A
           PCADJ     EQU    $F953
           CHAR1     EQU    $F9B4
           CHAR2     EQU    $F9BA
           MNEML     EQU    $F9C0
           MNEMR     EQU    $FA00
           CURSUP    EQU    $FC1A
           GETLNZ    EQU    $FD67
           COUT      EQU    $FDED
           BL1       EQU    $FE00
           A1PCLP    EQU    $FE78
           BELL      EQU    $FF3A
           GETNUM    EQU    $FFA7
           TOSUB     EQU    $FFBE
           ZMODE     EQU    $FFC7
           CHRTBL    EQU    $FFCC
                     ORG    $F500
F500: E9 81  REL      SBC    #$81          IS FMT COMPATIBLE
F502: 4A              LSR    A             WITH RELATIVE MODE?
F503: D0 14           BNE    ERR3          NO.
F505: A4 3F           LDY    A2H
F507: A6 3E           LDX    A2L           DOUBLE DECREMENT
F509: D0 01           BNE    REL2
F50B: 88              DEY
F50C: CA     REL2     DEX
F50D: 8A              TXA
F50E: 18              CLC
F50F: E5 3A           SBC    PCL           FORM ADDR-PC-2
F511: 85 3E           STA    A2L
F513: 10 01           BPL    REL3
F515: C8              INY
F516: 98     REL3     TYA
```

91

```
F517: E5 3B              SBC PCH
F519: D0 6B      ERR3    BNE ERR       ERROR IF >1-BYTE BRANCH
F51B: A4 2F      FINDOP  LDY LENGTH
F51D: B9 3D 00   FNDOP2  LDA A1H,Y     MOVE INST TO (PC)
F520: 91 3A              STA (PCL),Y
F522: 88                 DEY
F523: 10 F8              BPL FNDOP2
F525: 20 1A FC           JSR CURSUP
F528: 20 1A FC           JSR CURSUP    RESTORE CURSOR
F52B: 20 D0 F8           JSR INSTDSP   TYPE FORMATTED LINE
F52E: 20 53 F9           JSR PCADJ     UPDATE PC
F531: 84 3B              STY PCH
F533: 85 3A              STA PCL
F535: 4C 95 F5           JMP NXTLINE   GET NEXT LINE
F538: 20 BE FF   FAKEMON3 JSR TOSUB    GO TO DELIM HANDLER
F53B: A4 34              LDY YSAV      RESTORE Y-INDEX
F53D: 20 A7 FF   FAKEMON JSR GETNUM    READ PARAM
F540: 84 34              STY YSAV      SAVE Y-INDEX
F542: A0 17              LDY #$17      INIT DELIMITER INDEX
F544: 88        FAKEMON2 DEY          CHECK NEXT DELIM
F545: 30 4B              BMI RESETZ    ERR IF UNRECOGNIZED DELIM
F547: D9 CC FF           CMP CHRTBL,Y  COMPARE WITH DELIM TABLE
F54A: D0 F8              BNE FAKEMON2  NO MATCH
F54C: C0 15              CPY #$15      MATCH, IS IT CR?
F54E: D0 E8              BNE FAKEMON3  NO, HANDLE IT IN MONITOR
F550: A5 31              LDA MODE
F552: A0 00              LDY #$0
F554: C6 34              DEC YSAV
F556: 20 00 FE           JSR BL1       HANDLE CR OUTSIDE MONITOR
F559: 4C 95 F5           JMP NXTLINE
F55C: A5 3D      TRYNEXT LDA A1H       GET TRIAL OPCODE
F55E: 20 8E F8           JSR INSDS2    GET FMT+LENGTH FOR OPCODE
F561: AA                 TAX
F562: BD 00 FA           LDA MNEMR,X   GET LOWER MNEMONIC BYTE
F565: C5 42              CMP A4L       MATCH?
F567: D0 13              BNE NEXTOP    NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE
F569: BD C0 F9           LDA MNEML,X   GET UPPER MNEMONIC BYTE
F56C: C5 43              CMP A4H       MATCH?
F56E: D0 0C              BNE NEXTOP    NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE.
F570: A5 44              LDA FMT
F572: A4 2E              LDY FORMAT    GET TRIAL FORMAT
F574: C0 9D              CPY #$9D      TRIAL FORMAT RELATIVE?
F576: F0 88              BEQ REL       YES.
F578: C5 2E      NREL    CMP FORMAT    SAME FORMAT?
F57A: F0 9F              BEQ FINDOP    YES.
F57C: C6 3D      NEXTOP  DEC A1H       NO, TRY NEXT OPCODE
F57E: D0 DC              BNE TRYNEXT
F580: E6 44              INC FMT       NO MORE, TRY WITH LEN=2
F582: C6 35              DEC L         WAS L=2 ALREADY?
F584: F0 D6              BEQ TRYNEXT   NO.
F586: A4 34      ERR     LDY YSAV      YES, UNRECOGNIZED INST.
F588: 98        ERR2     TYA
F589: AA                 TAX
F58A: 20 4A F9           JSR PRBL2     PRINT ^ UNDER LAST READ
F58D: A9 DE              LDA #$DE      CHAR TO INDICATE ERROR
F58F: 20 ED FD           JSR COUT      POSITION.
F592: 20 3A FF   RESETZ  JSR BELL
F595: A9 A1      NXTLINE LDA #$A1      '!'
F597: 85 33              STA PROMPT    INITIALIZE PROMPT
F599: 20 67 FD           JSR GETLNZ    GET LINE.
F59C: 20 C7 FF           JSR ZMODE     INIT SCREEN STUFF
F59F: AD 00 02           LDA IN        GET CHAR
F5A2: C9 A0              CMP #$A0      ASCII BLANK?
F5A4: F0 13              BEQ SPACE     YES
F5A6: C8                 INY
F5A7: C9 A4              CMP #$A4      ASCII '$' IN COL 1?
F5A9: F0 92              BEQ FAKEMON   YES, SIMULATE MONITOR
F5AB: 88                 DEY           NO, BACKUP A CHAR
F5AC: 20 A7 FF           JSR GETNUM    GET A NUMBER
F5AF: C9 93              CMP #$93      ':' TERMINATOR?
F5B1: D0 D5      ERR4    BNE ERR2      NO, ERR.
F5B3: 8A                 TXA
F5B4: F0 D2              BEQ ERR2      NO ADR PRECEDING COLON.
F5B6: 20 78 FE           JSR A1PCLP    MOVE ADR TO PCL, PCH.
F5B9: A9 03      SPACE   LDA #$3       COUNT OF CHARS IN MNEMONIC
F5BB: 85 3D              STA A1H
F5BD: 20 34 F6   NXTMN   JSR GETNSP    GET FIRST MNEM CHAR.
F5C0: 0A        NXTM     ASL A
F5C1: E9 BE              SBC #$BE      SUBTRACT OFFSET
F5C3: C9 C2              CMP #$C2      LEGAL CHAR?
F5C5: 90 C1              BCC ERR2      NO.
F5C7: 0A                 ASL A         COMPRESS-LEFT JUSTIFY
F5C8: 0A                 ASL A
F5C9: A2 04              LDX #$4
F5CB: 0A        NXTM2    ASL A         DO 5 TRIPLE WORD SHIFTS
```

```
F5CC: 26 42              ROL   A4L
F5CE: 26 43              ROL   A4H
F5D0: CA                 DEX
F5D1: 10 F8              BPL   NXTM2
F5D3: C6 3D              DEC   A1H      DONE WITH 3 CHARS?
F5D5: F0 F4              BEQ   NXTM2    YES, BUT DO 1 MORE SHIFT
F5D7: 10 E4              BPL   NXTMN    NO
F5D9: A2 05      FORM1   LDX   #$5      5 CHARS IN ADDR MODE
F5DB: 20 34 F6   FORM2   JSR   GETNSP   GET FIRST CHAR OF ADDR
F5DE: 84 34              STY   YSAV
F5E0: DD B4 F9           CMP   CHAR1,X  FIRST CHAR MATCH PATTERN?
F5E3: D0 13              BNE   FORM3    NO
F5E5: 20 34 F6           JSR   GETNSP   YES, GET SECOND CHAR
F5E8: DD BA F9           CMP   CHAR2,X  MATCHES SECOND HALF?
F5EB: F0 0D              BEQ   FORM5    YES
F5ED: BD BA F9           LDA   CHAR2,X  NO, IS SECOND HALF ZERO?
F5F0: F0 07              BEQ   FORM4    YES.
F5F2: C9 A4              CMP   #$A4     NO,SECOND HALF OPTIONAL?
F5F4: F0 03              BEQ   FORM4    YES.
F5F6: A4 34              LDY   YSAV
F5F8: 18         FORM3   CLC            CLEAR BIT-NO MATCH
F5F9: 88         FORM4   DEY            BACK UP 1 CHAR
F5FA: 26 44      FORM5   ROL   FMT      FORM FORMAT BYTE
F5FC: E0 03              CPX   #$3      TIME TO CHECK FOR ADDR.
F5FE: D0 0D              BNE   FORM7    NO
F600: 20 A7 FF           JSR   GETNUM   YES
F603: A5 3F              LDA   A2H
F605: F0 01              BEQ   FORM6    HIGH-ORDER BYTE ZERO
F607: E8                 INX            NO, INCR FOR 2-BYTE
F608: 86 35      FORM6   STX   L        STORE LENGTH
F60A: A2 03              LDX   #$3      RELOAD FORMAT INDEX
F60C: 88                 DEY            BACKUP A CHAR
F60D: 86 3D      FORM7   STX   A1H      SAVE INDEX
F60F: CA                 DEX            DONE WITH FORMAT CHECK?
F610: 10 C9              BPL   FORM2    NO.
F612: A5 44              LDA   FMT      YES, PUT LENGTH
F614: 0A                 ASL   A
F615: 0A                 ASL   A        IN LOW BITS
F616: 05 35              ORA   L
F618: C9 20              CMP   #$20
F61A: B0 06              BCS   FORM8    ADD '$' IF NONZERO LENGTH
F61C: A6 35              LDX   L        AND DON'T ALREADY HAVE IT
F61E: F0 02              BEQ   FORM8
F620: 09 80              ORA   #$80
F622: 85 44      FORM8   STA   FMT
F624: 84 34              STY   YSAV
F626: B9 00 02           LDA   IN,Y     GET NEXT NONBLANK
F629: C9 BB              CMP   #$BB     ';' START OF COMMENT?
F62B: F0 04              BEQ   FORM9    YES
F62D: C9 8D              CMP   #$8D     CARRIAGE RETURN?
F62F: D0 80              BNE   ERR4     NO, ERR.
F631: 4C 5C F5   FORM9   JMP   TRYNEXT
F634: B9 00 02   GETNSP  LDA   IN,Y
F637: C8                 INY
F638: C9 A0              CMP   #$A0     GET NEXT NON BLANK CHAR
F63A: F0 F8              BEQ   GETNSP
F63C: 60                 RTS
                         ORG   $F666
F666: 4C 92 F5   MINASM  JMP   RESETZ
```

93

```
                **********************
                *                    *
                *   APPLE-II FLOATING *
                *    POINT ROUTINES   *
                *                    *
                *   COPYRIGHT 1977 BY *
                * APPLE COMPUTER INC. *
                *                    *
                *  ALL RIGHTS RESERVED *
                *                    *
                *     S. WOZNIAK      *
                *                    *
                **********************
                TITLE "FLOATING POINT ROUTINES"
                SIGN     EPZ    $F3
                X2       EPZ    $F4
                M2       EPZ    $F5
                X1       EPZ    $F8
                M1       EPZ    $F9
                E        EPZ    $FC
                OVLOC    EQU    $3F5
                         ORG    $F425
F425: 18        ADD      CLC                 CLEAR CARRY.
F426: A2 02              LDX    #$2          INDEX FOR 3-BYTE ADD.
F428: B5 F9     ADD1     LDA    M1,X
F42A: 75 F5              ADC    M2,X         ADD A BYTE OF MANT2 TO MANT1.
F42C: 95 F9              STA    M1,X
F42E: CA                 DEY                 INDEX TO NEXT MORE SIGNIF. BYTE.
F42F: 10 F7              BPL    ADD1         LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F431: 60                 RTS                 RETURN
F432: 06 F3     MD1      ASL    SIGN         CLEAR LSB OF SIGN.
F434: 20 37 F4           JSR    ABSWAP       ABS VAL OF M1, THEN SWAP WITH M2
F437: 24 F9     ABSWAP   BIT    M1           MANT1 NEGATIVE?
F439: 10 05              BPL    ABSWAP1      NO, SWAP WITH MANT2 AND RETURN.
F43B: 20 A4 F4           JSR    FCOMPL       YES, COMPLEMENT IT.
F43E: E6 F3              INC    SIGN         INC SIGN, COMPLEMENTING LSB.
F440: 38        ABSWAP1  SEC                 SET CARRY FOR RETURN TO MUL/DIV.
F441: A2 04     SWAP     LDX    #$4          INDEX FOR 4-BYTE SWAP.
F443: 94 FB     SWAP1    STY    E-1,X
F445: B5 F7              LDA    X1-1,X       SWAP A BYTE OF EXP/MANT1 WITH
F447: B4 F3              LDY    X2-1,X       EXP/MANT2 AND LEAVE A COPY OF
F449: 94 F7              STY    X1-1,X       MANT1 IN E (3 BYTES).  E+3 USED
F44B: 95 F3              STA    X2-1,X
F44D: CA                 DEX                 ADVANCE INDEX TO NEXT BYTE.
F44E: D0 F3              BNE    SWAP1        LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F450: 60                 RTS                 RETURN
F451: A9 8E     FLOAT    LDA    #$8E         INIT EXP1 TO 14,
F453: 85 F8              STA    X1           THEN NORMALIZE TO FLOAT.
F455: A5 F9     NORM1    LDA    M1           HIGH-ORDER MANT1 BYTE.
F457: C9 C0              CMP    #$C0         UPPER TWO BITS UNEQUAL?
F459: 30 0C              BMI    RTS1         YES, RETURN WITH MANT1 NORMALIZED
F45B: C6 F8              DEC    X1           DECREMENT EXP1.
F45D: 06 FB              ASL    M1+2
F45F: 26 FA              ROL    M1+1         SHIFT MANT1 (3 BYTES) LEFT.
F461: 26 F9              ROL    M1
F463: A5 F8     NORM     LDA    X1           EXP1 ZERO?
F465: D0 EE              BNE    NORM1        NO, CONTINUE NORMALIZING.
F467: 60        RTS1     RTS                 RETURN.
F468: 20 A4 F4  FSUB     JSR    FCOMPL       CMPL MANT1,CLEARS CARRY UNLESS 0
F46B: 20 7B F4  SWPALGN  JSR    ALGNSWP      RIGHT SHIFT MANT1 OR SWAP WITH
F46E: A5 F4     FADD     LDA    X2
F470: C5 F8              CMP    X1           COMPARE EXP1 WITH EXP2.
F472: D0 F7              BNE    SWPALGN      IF #,SWAP ADDENDS OR ALIGN MANTS.
F474: 20 25 F4           JSR    ADD          ADD ALIGNED MANTISSAS.
F477: 50 EA     ADDEND   BVC    NORM         NO OVERFLOW, NORMALIZE RESULT.
F479: 70 05              BVS    RTLOG        OV: SHIFT M1 RIGHT, CARRY INTO SIGN
```

94

```
F47B: 90 C4     ALGNSWP  BCC   SWAP      SWAP IF CARRY CLEAR,
              *          FLSE SHIFT RIGHT ARITH.
F47D: A5 F9     RTAR     LDA   M1        SICN OF MANT1 INTO CARRY FOR
F47F: 0A                 ASL   A         RIGHT ARITH SHIFT.
F480: E6 F8     RTLOC    INC   X1        INCR X1 TO ADJUST FOR RIGHT SHIFT
F482: F0 75              REC   OVFL      EXP1 OUT OF RANGE.
F484: A2 FA     RTLOG1   LDX   #$FA      INDEX FOR 6:RYTE RIGHT SHIFT.
F486: 76 FF     ROR1     ROR   E+3,X
F488: E8                 INX             NEXT BYTE OF SHIFT.
F489: D0 FB              BNE   ROR1      LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F48B: 60                 RTS             RETURN.
F48C: 20 32 F4  FMUL     JSR   MD1       ABS VAL OF MANT1, MANT2.
F48F: 65 F8              ADC   X1        ADD EXP1 TO EXP2 FOR PRODUCT EXP
F491: 20 E2 F4           JSR   MD2       CHECK PROD. EXP AND PREP. FOR MUL
F494: 18                 CLC             CLEAR CARRY FOR FIRST BIT.
F495: 20 84 F4  MUL1     JSR   RTLOG1    M1 AND E RIGHT (PROD AND MPLIEP)
F498: 90 03              BCC   MUL2      IF CARRY CLEAR, SKIP PARTIAL PROD
F49A: 20 25 F4           JSR   ADD       ADD MULTIPLICAND TO PRODUCT.
F49D: 88        MUL2     DEY             NEXT MUL ITERATION.
F49E: 10 F5              BPL   MUL1      LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F4A0: 46 F3              LSR   SIGN      TEST SIGN LSB.
F4A2: 90 CF     NORMX    BCC   NORM      IF EVEN,NORMALIZE PROD,ELSE COMP
F4A4: 38        FCOMPL   SEC             SET CARRY FOR SUBTRACT.
F4A5: A2 03              LDX   #$3       INDEX FOR 3-RYTE SUBTRACT.
F4A7: A9 00     COMPL1   LDA   #$0       CLEAR A.
F4A9: F5 F8              SBC   X1,X      SUBTRACT RYTE OF EXP1.
F4AB: 95 F8              STA   X1,X      RESTORE IT.
F4AD: CA                 DEX             NEXT MORE SIGNIFICANT BYTE.
F4AE: D0 F7              BNE   COMPL1    LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F4B0: F0 C5              BEQ   ADDEND    NORMALIZE (OR SHIFT RT IF OVFL).
F4B2: 20 32 F4  FDIV     JSR   MD1       TAKE ABS VAL OF MANT1, MANT2.
F4B5: E5 F8              SBC   X1        SUBTRACT EXP1 FROM EXP2.
F4B7: 20 E2 F4           JSR   MD2       SAVE AS QUOTIENT EXP.
F4BA: 38        DIV1     SEC             SET CARRY FOR SUBTRACT.
F4BB: A2 02              LDX   #$2       INDEX FOR 3-PYTE SUBTRACTION.
F4BD: B5 F5     DIV2     LDA   M2,X
F4BF: F5 FC              SBC   E,X       SUBTRACT A BYTE OF E FROM MANT2.
F4C1: 48                 PHA             SAVE ON STACK.
F4C2: CA                 DEX             NEXT MORE SIGNIFICANT BYTE.
F4C3: 10 F8              BPL   DIV2      LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F4C5: A2 FD              LDX   #$FD      INDEX FOR 3-BYTE CONDITIONAL MOVE
F4C7: 68        DIV3     PLA             PULL BYTE OF DIFFERENCE OFF STACK
F4C8: 90 02              BCC   DIV4      IF M2<E THEN DON'T RESTORE M2.
F4CA: 95 F8              STA   M2+3,X
F4CC: E8        DIV4     INX             NEXT LESS SIGNIFICANT RYTE.
F4CD: D0 F8              BNE   DIV3      LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F4CF: 26 FB              ROL   M1+2
F4D1: 26 FA              ROL   M1+1      ROLL QUOTIENT LEFT,CARRY INTO LSB
F4D3: 26 F9              ROL   M1
F4D5: 06 F7              ASL   M2+2
F4D7: 26 F6              ROL   M2+1      SHIFT DIVIDEND LEFT.
F4D9: 26 F5              ROL   M2
F4DB: B0 1C              BCS   OVFL      OVFL IS DUE TO UNNORMED DIVISOR
F4DD: 88                 DEY             NEXT DIVIDE ITERATION.
F4DE: D0 DA              BNE   DIV1      LOOP UNTIL DONE 23 ITERATIONS.
F4E0: F0 BE              BEQ   MDEND     NORM. QUOTIENT AND CORRECT SIGN.
F4E2: 86 FB     MD2      STX   M1+2
F4E4: 86 FA              STX   M1+1      CLEAR MANT1 (3 BYTES) FOR MUL/DIV.
F4E6: 86 F9              STX   M1
F4E8: B0 0D              BCS   OVCHK     IF CALC. SET CARRY,CHECK FOR OVFL
F4EA: 30 04              BMI   MD3       IF NEG THEN NO UNDERFLOW.
F4EC: 68                 PLA             POP ONE RETURN LEVEL.
F4ED: 68                 PLA
F4EE: 90 B2              BCC   NORMX     CLEAR X1 AND RETURN.
F4F0: 49 80     MD3      EOR   #$80      COMPLEMENT SIGN BIT OF EXPONENT.
F4F2: 85 F8              STA   X1        STORE IT.
F4F4: A0 17              LDY   #$17      COUNT 24 MUL/23 DIV ITERATIONS
F4F6: 60                 RTS             RETURN.
F4F7: 10 F7     OVCHK    BPL   MD3       IF POSITIVE EXP THEN NO OVFL.
F4F9: 4C F5 03  OVFL     JMP   OVLOC
                         ORG   $F63D
F63D: 20 7D F4  FIX1     JSR   RTAR
F640: A5 F8     FIX      LDA   X1
F642: 10 13              BPL   UNDFL
F644: C9 8E              CMP   #$8E
F646: D0 F5              DNE   FIX1
F648: 24 F9              BIT   M1
F64A: 10 0A              BPL   FIXRTS
F64C: A5 FB              LDA   M1+2
F64E: F0 06              BEQ   FIXRTS
F650: E6 FA              INC   M1+1
F652: D0 02              BNE   FIXRTS
F654: E6 F9              INC   M1
F656: 60        FIXRTS   RTS
F657: A9 00     UNDFL    LDA   #$0
F659: 85 F9              STA   M1
F65B: 85 FA              STA   M1+1
F65D: 60                 RTS
```

```
                ************************
                *                      *
                *    APPLE-II PSEUDO   *
                *  MACHINE INTERPRETER *
                *                      *
                *    COPYRIGHT 1977    *
                *  APPLE COMPUTER INC  *
                *                      *
                *  ALL RIGHTS RESERVED *
                *                      *
                *      S. WOZNIAK      *
                *                      *
                ************************
                TITLE "SWEET16 INTERPRETER"
                ROL       EPZ   $0
                ROH       EPZ   $1
                R14H      EPZ   $1D
                R15L      EPZ   $1E
                R15H      EPZ   $1F
                S16PAG    EQU   $F7
                SAVE      EQU   $FF4A
                RESTORE   EQU   $FF3F
                          ORG   $F689
F689: 20 4A FF  SW16      JSR   SAVE      PRESERVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
F68C: 68                  PLA
F68D: 85 1E               STA   R15L      INIT SWEET16 PC
F68F: 68                  PLA             FROM RETURN
F690: 85 1F               STA   R15H      ADDRESS
F692: 20 98 F6  SW16B     JSR   SW16C     INTERPRET AND EXECUTE
F695: 4C 92 F6            JMP   SW16B     ONE SWEET16 INSTR.
F698: E6 1E     SW16C     INC   R15L
F69A: D0 02               BNE   SW16D     INCR SWEET16 PC FOR FETCH
F69C: E6 1F               INC   R15H
F69E: A9 F7     SW16D     LDA   #S16PAG
F6A0: 48                  PHA             PUSH ON STACK FOR RTS
F6A1: A0 00               LDY   #$0
F6A3: B1 1E               LDA   (R15L),Y  FETCH INSTR
F6A5: 29 0F               AND   #$F       MASK REG SPECIFICATION
F6A7: 0A                  ASL   A         DOUBLE FOR 2-BYTE REGISTERS
F6A8: AA                  TAX             TO X-REG FOR INDEXING
F6A9: 4A                  LSR   A
F6AA: 51 1E               EOR   (R15L),Y  NOW HAVE OPCODE
F6AC: F0 0B               BEQ   TOBR      IF ZERO THEN NON-REG OP
F6AE: 86 1D               STX   R14H      INDICATE 'PRIOR RESULT REG'
F6B0: 4A                  LSR   A
F6B1: 4A                  LSR   A         OPCODE*2 TO LSB'S
F6B2: 4A                  LSR   A
F6B3: A8                  TAY             TO Y-REG FOR INDEXING
F6B4: B9 E1 F6            LDA   OPTBL-2,Y LOW-ORDER ADR BYTE
F6B7: 48                  PHA             ONTO STACK
F6B8: 60                  RTS             GOTO REG-OP ROUTINE
F6B9: E6 1E     TOBR      INC   R15L
F6BB: D0 02               BNE   TOBR2     INCR PC
F6BD: E6 1F               INC   R15H
F6BF: BD E4 F6  TOBR2     LDA   OPTBL,X   LOW-ORDER ADR BYTE
F6C2: 48                  PHA             ONTO STACK FOR NON-REG OP
F6C3: A5 1D               LDA   R14H      'PRIOR RESULT REG' INDEX
F6C5: 4A                  LSR   A         PREPARE CARRY FOR BC, BNC.
F6C6: 60                  RTS             GOTO NON-REG OP ROUTINE
F6C7: 68        RTNZ      PLA             POP RETURN ADDRESS
F6C8: 68                  PLA
F6C9: 20 3F FF            JSR   RESTORE   RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
F6CC: 6C 1E 00            JMP   (R15L)    RETURN TO 6502 CODE VIA PC
F6CF: B1 1E     SETZ      LDA   (R15L),Y  HIGH-ORDER BYTE OF CONSTANT
```

```
F6D1: 95 01              STA   R0H,X
F6D3: 88                 DEY
F6D4: B1 1E              LDA   (R15L),Y  LOW-ORDER BYTE OF CONSTANT
F6D6: 95 00              STA   R0L,X
F6D8: 98                 TYA            Y-REG CONTAINS 1
F6D9: 38                 SEC
F6DA: 65 1E              ADC   R15L     ADD 2 TO PC
F6DC: 85 1E              STA   R15L
F6DE: 90 02              BCC   SET2
F6E0: E6 1F              INC   R15H
F6E2: 60        SET2     RTS
F6E3: 02        OPTBL    DFB   SET-1    (1X)
 6E4: F9        BRTBL    DFB   RTN-1    (0)
F6E5: 04                 DFB   LD-1     (2X)
F6E6: 9D                 DFB   BR-1     (1)
F6E7: 0D                 DFB   ST-1     (3X)
F6E8: 9E                 DFB   BNC-1    (2)
F6E9: 25                 DFB   LDAT-1   (4X)
F6EA: AF                 DFB   BC-1     (3)
F6EB: 16                 DFB   STAT-1   (5X)
F6EC: B2                 DFB   BP-1     (4)
F6ED: 47                 DFB   LDDAT-1  (6X)
F6EE: B9                 DFB   BM-1     (5)
F6EF: 51                 DFB   STDAT-1  (7X)
F6F0: C0                 DFB   BZ-1     (6)
F6F1: 2F                 DFB   POP-1    (8X)
F6F2: C9                 DFB   BNZ-1    (7)
F6F3: 5B                 DFB   STPAT-1  (9X)
F6F4: D2                 DFB   BM1-1    (8)
F6F5: 85                 DFB   ADD-1    (AX)
F6F6: DD                 DFB   BNM1-1   (9)
F6F7: 6E                 DFB   SUB-1    (BX)
F6F8: 05                 DFB   BK-1     (A)
F6F9: 33                 DFB   POPD-1   (CX)
F6FA: E8                 DFB   RS-1     (B)
F6FB: 70                 DFB   CPR-1    (DX)
F6FC: 93                 DFB   BS-1     (C)
F6FD: 1E                 DFB   INR-1    (EX)
F6FE: E7                 DFB   NUL-1    (D)
F6FF: 65                 DFB   DCR-1    (FX)
F700: E7                 DFB   NUL-1    (E)
F701: E7                 DFB   NUL-1    (UNUSED)
F702: E7                 DFB   NUL-1    (F)
F703: 10 CA   SET        BPL   SETZ     ALWAYS TAKEN
F705: B5 00   LD         LDA   R0L,X
              BK         EQU   *-1
F707: 85 00              STA   R0L
F709: B5 01              LDA   R0H,X    MOVE RX TO R0
F70B: 85 01              STA   R0H
F70D: 60                 RTS
F70E: A5 00   ST         LDA   R0L
F710: 95 00              STA   R0L,X    MOVE R0 TO RX
F712: A5 01              LDA   R0H
F714: 95 01              STA   R0H,X
F716: 60                 RTS
F717: A5 00   STAT       LDA   R0L
F719: 81 00   STAT2      STA   (R0L,X)  STORE BYTE INDIRECT
F71B: A0 00              LDY   #$0
F71D: 84 1D   STAT3      STY   R14H     INDICATE R0 IS RESULT REG
F71F: F6 00   INR        INC   R0L,X
F721: D0 02              BNE   INR2     INCR RX
F723: F6 01              INC   R0H,X
F725: 60      INR2       RTS
F726: A1 00   LDAT       LDA   (R0L,X)  LOAD INDIRECT (RX)
F728: 85 00              STA   R0L      TO R0
F72A: A0 00              LDY   #$0
F72C: 84 01              STY   R0H      ZERO HIGH-ORDER R0 BYTE
F72E: F0 ED              BEQ   STAT3    ALWAYS TAKEN
F730: A0 00   POP        LDY   #$0      HIGH ORDER BYTE = 0
F732: F0 06              BEQ   POP2     ALWAYS TAKEN
F734: 20 66 F7 POPD      JSR   DCR      DECR RX
F737: A1 00              LDA   (R0L,X)  POP HIGH-ORDER BYTE @RX
F739: A8                 TAY            SAVE IN Y-REG
F73A: 20 66 F7 POP2      JSR   DCR      DECR RX
F73D: A1 00              LDA   (R0L,X)  LOW-ORDER BYTE
F73F: 85 00              STA   R0L      TO R0
F741: 84 01              STY   R0H
F743: A0 00   POP3       LDY   #$0      INDICATE R0 AS LAST RSLT REG
F745: 84 1D              STY   R14H
F747: 60                 RTS
F748: 20 26 F7 LDDAT     JSR   LDAT     LOW-ORDER BYTE TO R0, INCR RX
F74B: A1 00              LDA   (R0L,X)  HIGH-ORDER BYTE TO R0
F74D: 85 01              STA   R0H
F74F: 4C 1F F7           JMP   INR      INCR RX
F752: 20 17 F7 STDAT     JSR   STAT     STORE INDIRECT LOW-ORDER
```

```
F755: A5 01          LDA   ROH        BYTE AND INCR RX.  THEN
F757: 81 00          STA   (ROL,X)    STORE HIGH-ORDER BYTE.
F759: 4C 1F F7       JMP   INR        INCR RX AND RETURN
F75C: 20 66 F7 STPAT JSR   DCR        DECR RX
F75F: A5 00          LDA   ROL
F761: 81 00          STA   (ROL,X)    STORE RO LOW BYTE @RX
F763: 4C 43 F7       JMP   POP3       INDICATE RO AS LAST RSLT REG
F766: B5 00    DCR   LDA   ROL,X
F768: D0 02          BNE   DCR2       DECR RX
F76A: D6 01          DEC   ROH,X
F76C: D6 00    DCR2  DEC   ROL,X
F76E: 60             RTS
F76F: A0 00    SUB   LDY   #$0        RESULT TO RO
                                      NOTE Y-REG = 13*2 FOR CPR
F771: 38       CPR   SEC
F772: A5 00          LDA   ROL
F774: F5 00          SBC   ROL,X      RO-RX TO RY
F776: 99 00 00       STA   ROL,Y
F779: A5 01          LDA   ROH
F77B: F5 01          SBC   ROH,X
F77D: 99 01 00 SUB2  STA   ROH,Y
F780: 98             TYA              LAST RESULT REG*2
F781: 69 00          ADC   #$0        CARRY TO LSB
F783: 85 1D          STA   R14H
F785: 60             RTS
F786: A5 00    ADD   LDA   ROL
F788: 75 00          ADC   ROL,X
F78A: 85 00          STA   ROL        RO+RX TO RO
F78C: A5 01          LDA   ROH
F78E: 75 01          ADC   ROH,X
F790: A0 00          LDY   #$0        RO FOR RESULT
F792: F0 E9          BEQ   SUB2       FINISH ADD
F794: A5 1E    BS    LDA   R15L       NOTE X-REG IS 12*2!
F796: 20 19 F7       JSR   STAT2      PUSH LOW PC BYTE VIA R12
F799: A5 1F          LDA   R15H
F79B: 20 19 F7       JSR   STAT2      PUSH HIGH-ORDER PC BYTE
F79E: 18       BR    CLC
F79F: B0 0E    BNC   BCS   BNC2       NO CARRY TEST
F7A1: B1 1E    BR1   LDA   (R15L),Y   DISPLACEMENT BYTE
F7A3: 10 01          BPL   BR2
F7A5: 88             DEY
F7A6: 65 1E    BR2   ADC   R15L       ADD TO PC
F7A8: 85 1E          STA   R15L
F7AA: 98             TYA
F7AB: 65 1F          ADC   R15H
F7AD: 85 1F          STA   R15H
F7AF: 60       BNC2  RTS
F7B0: B0 EC    BC    BCS   BR
F7B2: 60             RTS
F7B3: 0A       BP    ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7B4: AA             TAX              TO X-REG FOR INDEXING
F7B5: B5 01          LDA   ROH,X      TEST FOR PLUS
F7B7: 10 E8          BPL   BR1        BRANCH IF SO
F7B9: 60             RTS
F7BA: 0A       BM    ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7BB: AA             TAX
F7BC: B5 01          LDA   ROH,X      TEST FOR MINUS
F7BE: 30 E1          BMI   BR1
F7C0: 60             RTS
F7C1: 0A       BZ    ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7C2: AA             TAX
F7C3: B5 00          LDA   ROL,X      TEST FOR ZERO
F7C5: 15 01          ORA   ROH,X      (BOTH BYTES)
F7C7: F0 D8          BEQ   BR1        BRANCH IF SO
F7C9: 60             RTS
F7CA: 0A       BNZ   ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7CB: AA             TAX
F7CC: B5 00          LDA   ROL,X      TEST FOR NONZERO
F7CE: 15 01          ORA   ROH,X      (BOTH BYTES)
F7D0: D0 CF          BNE   BR1        BRANCH IF SO
F7D2: 60             RTS
F7D3: 0A       BM1   ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7D4: AA             TAX
F7D5: B5 00          LDA   ROL,X      CHECK BOTH BYTES
F7D7: 35 01          AND   ROH,X      FOR $FF (MINUS 1)
F7D9: 49 FF          EOR   #$FF
F7DB: F0 C4          BEQ   BR1        BRANCH IF SO
F7DD: 60             RTS
F7DE: 0A       BNM1  ASL   A          DOUBLE RESULT-REG INDEX
F7DF: AA             TAX
F7E0: B5 00          LDA   ROL,X
F7E2: 35 01          AND   ROH,X      CHECK BOTH BYTES FOR NO $FF
F7E4: 49 FF          EOR   #$FF
F7E6: D0 B9          BNE   BR1        BRANCH IF NOT MINUS 1
F7E8: 60       NUL   RTS
F7E9: A2 18    RS    LDX   #$18       12*2 FOR R12 AS STK POINTER
```

```
F7EB: 20 66 F7       JSR   DCR        DECR STACK POINTER
F7EE: A1 00          LDA   (R0L,X)    POP HIGH RETURN ADR TO PC
F7F0: 85 1F          STA   R15H
F7F2: 20 66 F7       JSR   DCR        SAME FOR LOW-ORDER BYTE
F7F5: A1 00          LDA   (R0L,X)
F7F7: 85 1E          STA   R15L
F7F9: 60             RTS
F7FA: 4C C7 F6  RTN  JMP   RTNZ
```

6502 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTIONS

ADC	Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry	**LDA**	Load Accumulator with Memory
AND	"AND" Memory with Accumulator	**LDX**	Load Index X with Memory
ASL	Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)	**LDY**	Load Index Y with Memory
		LSR	Shift Right one Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
BCC	Branch on Carry Clear	**NOP**	No Operation
BCS	Branch on Carry Set	**ORA**	"OR" Memory with Accumulator
BEQ	Branch on Result Zero	**PHA**	Push Accumulator on Stack
BIT	Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator	**PHP**	Push Processor Status on Stack
BMI	Branch on Result Minus	**PLA**	Pull Accumulator from Stack
BNE	Branch on Result not Zero	**PLP**	Pull Processor Status from Stack
BPL	Branch on Result Plus	**ROL**	Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)
BRK	Force Break		
BVC	Branch on Overflow Clear	**ROR**	Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or Accumulator)
BVS	Branch on Overflow Set		
CLC	Clear Carry Flag	**RTI**	Return from Interrupt
CLD	Clear Decimal Mode	**RTS**	Return from Subroutine
CLI	Clear Interrupt Disable Bit	**SBC**	Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow
CLV	Clear Overflow Flag		
CMP	Compare Memory and Accumulator	**SEC**	Set Carry Flag
CPX	Compare Memory and Index X	**SED**	Set Decimal Mode
CPY	Compare Memory and Index Y	**SEI**	Set Interrupt Disable Status
DEC	Decrement Memory by One	**STA**	Store Accumulator in Memory
DEX	Decrement Index X by One	**STX**	Store Index X in Memory
DEY	Decrement Index Y by One	**STY**	Store Index Y in Memory
EOR	"Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator	**TAX**	Transfer Accumulator to Index X
		TAY	Transfer Accumulator to Index Y
INC	Increment Memory by One	**TSX**	Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X
INX	Increment Index X by One	**TXA**	Transfer Index X to Accumulator
INY	increment Index Y by One	**TXS**	Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer
JMP	Jump to New Location	**TYA**	Transfer Index Y to Accumulator
JSR	Jump to New Location Saving Return Address		

THE FOLLOWING NOTATION APPLIES TO THIS SUMMARY:

A	Accumulator
X, Y	Index Registers
M	Memory
C̄	Borrow
P	Processor Status Register
S	Stack Pointer
✓	Change
—	No Change
+	Add
∧	Logical AND
-	Subtract
⩒	Logical Exclusive Or
↑	Transfer From Stack
↓	Transfer To Stack
→	Transfer To
←	Transfer To
V	Logical OR
PC	Program Counter
PCH	Program Counter High
PCL	Program Counter Low
OPER	Operand
#	Immediate Addressing Mode

FIGURE 1. ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION
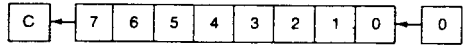
FIGURE 2. ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)

FIGURE 3.

NOTE 1: BIT — TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A ∧ M is zero then Z=1, otherwise Z=0.

PROGRAMMING MODEL

ACCUMULATOR

INDEX REGISTER Y

INDEX REGISTER X

PROGRAM COUNTER

STACK POINTER

PROCESSOR STATUS REGISTER, "P"

CARRY
ZERO
INTERRUPT DISABLE
DECIMAL MODE
BREAK COMMAND
OVERFLOW
NEGATIVE

101

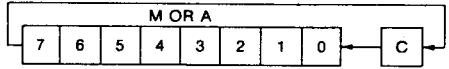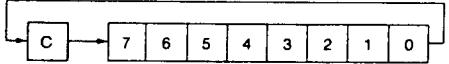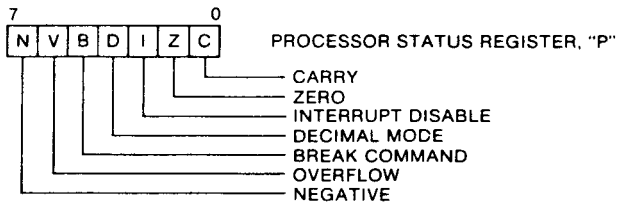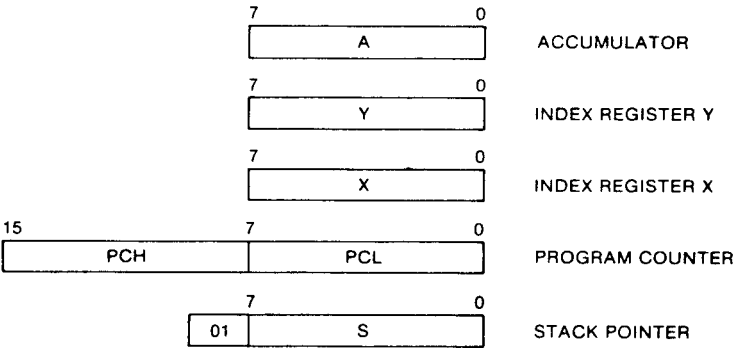| Name / Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
ADC Add memory to accumulator with carry	A+M+C → A,C	Immediate	ADC #Oper	69	2	√√√——√
		Zero Page	ADC Oper	65	2	
		Zero Page.X	ADC Oper.X	75	2	
		Absolute	ADC Oper	6D	3	
		Absolute.X	ADC Oper.X	7D	3	
		Absolute.Y	ADC Oper.Y	79	3	
		(indirect,X)	ADC (Oper,X)	61	2	
		(Indirect),Y	ADC (Oper),Y	71	2	
AND "AND" memory with accumulator	A∧M → A	Immediate	AND #Oper	29	2	√√————
		Zero Page	AND Oper	25	2	
		Zero Page.X	AND Oper.X	35	2	
		Absolute	AND Oper	2D	3	
		Absolute.X	AND Oper.X	3D	3	
		Absolute.Y	AND Oper.Y	39	3	
		(Indirect.X)	AND (Oper,X)	21	2	
		(Indirect),Y	AND (Oper),Y	31	2	
ASL Shift left one bit (Memory or Accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator	ASL A	0A	1	√√√———
		Zero Page	ASL Oper	06	2	
		Zero Page.X	ASL Oper.X	16	2	
		Absolute	ASL Oper	0E	3	
		Absolute.X	ASL Oper.X	1E	3	
BCC Branch on carry clear	Branch on C=0	Relative	BCC Oper	90	2	——————
BCS Branch on carry set	Branch on C=1	Relative	BCS Oper	B0	2	——————
BEQ Branch on result zero	Branch on Z=1	Relative	BEQ Oper	F0	2	——————
BIT Test bits in memory with accumulator	A∧M, M_7→N, M_6→V	Zero Page	BIT* Oper	24	2	M_7√————M_6
		Absolute	BIT* Oper	2C	3	
BMI Branch on result minus	Branch on N=1	Relative	BMI Oper	30	2	——————
BNE Branch on result not zero	Branch on Z=0	Relative	BNE Oper	D0	2	——————
BPL Branch on result plus	Branch on N=0	Relative	BPL oper	10	2	——————
BRK Force Break	Forced Interrupt PC+2↓P↓	Implied	BRK*	00	1	———1——
BVC Branch on overflow clear	Branch on V=0	Relative	BVC Oper	50	2	——————

Note 1 Bits 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A∧M is then Z=1, otherwise Z=0

Note 2 A BRK command cannot be masked by setting I.

Name / Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
BVS Branch on overflow set	Branch on V=1	Relative	BVS Oper	70	2	——————
CLC Clear carry flag	0→C	Implied	CLC	18	1	——0———
CLD Clear decimal mode	0→D	Implied	CLD	D8	1	————0—
CLI Clear decimal mode	0→I	Implied	CLI	58	1	———0——
CLV Clear overflow flag	0→V	Implied	CLV	B8	1	—————0
CMP Compare memory and accumulator	A — M	Immediate	CMP #Oper	C9	2	√√√———
		Zero Page	CMP Oper	C5	2	
		Zero Page. X	CMP Oper.X	D5	2	
		Absolute	CMP Oper	CD	3	
		Absolute.X	CMP Oper.X	DD	3	
		Absolute.Y	CMP Oper.Y	D9	3	
		(Indirect.X)	CMP (Oper,X)	C1	2	
		(Indirect).Y	CMP (Oper),Y	D1	2	
CPX Compare memory and index X	X — M	Immediate	CPX #Oper	E0	2	√√√———
		Zero Page	CPX Oper	E4	2	
		Absolute	CPX Oper	EC	3	
CPY Compare memory and index Y	Y — M	Immediate	CPY #Oper	C0	2	√√√———
		Zero Page	CPY Oper	C4	2	
		Absolute	CPY Oper	CC	3	
DEC Decrement memory by one	M — 1 → M	Zero Page	DEC Oper	C6	2	√√————
		Zero Page.X	DEC Oper.X	D6	2	
		Absolute	DEC Oper	CE	3	
		Absolute.X	DEC Oper.X	DE	3	
DEX Decrement index X by one	X — 1 → X	Implied	DEX	CA	1	√√————
DEY Decrement index Y by one	Y — 1 → Y	Implied	DEY	88	1	√√————

INSTRUCTION CODES

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
LSR Shift right one bit (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator	LSR A	4A	1	0 √ √ – – –
		Zero Page	LSR Oper	46	2	
		Zero Page.X	LSR Oper.X	56	2	
		Absolute	LSR Oper	4E	3	
		Absolute.X	LSR Oper.X	5E	3	
NOP No operation.	No Operation	Implied	NOP	EA	1	– – – – – –
ORA "OR" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate	ORA #Oper	09	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page	ORA Oper	05	2	
		Zero Page.X	ORA Oper.X	15	2	
		Absolute	ORA Oper	0D	3	
		Absolute.X	ORA Oper.X	1D	3	
		Absolute.Y	ORA Oper.Y	19	3	
		(Indirect.X)	ORA (Oper.X)	01	2	
		(Indirect).Y	ORA (Oper).Y	11	2	
PHA Push accumulator on stack	A ↓	Implied	PHA	48	1	– – – – – –
PHP Push processor status on stack	P ↓	Implied	PHP	08	1	– – – – – –
PLA Pull accumulator from stack	A ↑	Implied	PLA	68	1	√ √ – – – –
PLP Pull processor status from stack	P ↑	Implied	PLP	28	1	From Stack
ROL Rotate one bit left (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 2)	Accumulator	ROL A	2A	1	√ √ √ – – –
		Zero Page	ROL Oper	26	2	
		Zero Page.X	ROL Oper.X	36	2	
		Absolute	ROL Oper	2E	3	
		Absolute.X	ROL Oper.X	3E	3	
ROR Rotate one bit right (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 3)	Accumulator	ROR A	6A	1	√ √ √ – – –
		Zero Page	ROR Oper	66	2	
		Zero Page.X	ROR Oper.X	76	2	
		Absolute	ROR Oper	6E	3	
		Absolute.X	ROR Oper.X	7E	3	

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
EOR "Exclusive-Or" memory with accumulator	A V M → A	Immediate	EOR #Oper	49	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page	EOR Oper	45	2	
		Zero Page.X	EOR Oper.X	55	2	
		Absolute	EOR Oper	4D	3	
		Absolute.X	EOR Oper.X	5D	3	
		Absolute.Y	EOR Oper.Y	59	3	
		(Indirect.X)	EOR (Oper.X)	41	2	
		(Indirect).Y	EOR (Oper).Y	51	2	
INC Increment memory by one	M + 1 → M	Zero Page	INC Oper	E6	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page.X	INC Oper.X	F6	2	
		Absolute	INC Oper	EE	3	
		Absolute.X	INC Oper.X	FE	3	
INX Increment index X by one	X + 1 → X	Implied	INX	E8	1	√ √ – – – –
INY Increment index Y by one	Y + 1 → Y	Implied	INY	C8	1	√ √ – – – –
JMP Jump to new location	(PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JMP Oper	4C	3	– – – – – –
		Indirect	JMP (Oper)	6C	3	
JSR Jump to new location saving return address	PC+2 ↓ (PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JSR Oper	20	3	– – – – – –
LDA Load accumulator with memory	M → A	Immediate	LDA #Oper	A9	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page	LDA Oper	A5	2	
		Zero Page.X	LDA Oper.X	B5	2	
		Absolute	LDA Oper	AD	3	
		Absolute.X	LDA Oper.X	BD	3	
		Absolute.Y	LDA Oper.Y	B9	3	
		(Indirect.X)	LDA (Oper.X)	A1	2	
		(Indirect).Y	LDA (Oper).Y	B1	2	
LDX Load index X with memory	M → X	Immediate	LDX #Oper	A2	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page	LDX Oper	A6	2	
		Zero Page.Y	LDX Oper.Y	B6	2	
		Absolute	LDX Oper	AE	3	
		Absolute.Y	LDX Oper.Y	BE	3	
LDY Load index Y with memory	M → Y	Immediate	LDY #Oper	A0	2	√ √ – – – –
		Zero Page	LDY Oper	A4	2	
		Zero Page.X	LDY Oper.X	B4	2	
		Absolute	LDY Oper	AC	3	
		Absolute.X	LDY Oper.X	BC	3	

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
TXA Transfer index X to accumulator	X → A	Implied	TXA	8A	1	√√----
TXS Transfer index X to stack pointer	X → S	Implied	TXS	9A	1	------
TYA Transfer index Y to accumulator	Y → A	Implied	TYA	98	1	√√----

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
RTI Return from interrupt	P↑ PC↑	Implied	RTI	40	1	From Stack
RTS Return from subroutine	PC↑, PC-1 → PC	Implied	RTS		1	------
SBC Subtract memory from accumulator with borrow	A - M - C̄ → A	Immediate	SBC #Oper	E9	2	√√√--√
		Zero Page	SBC Oper	E5	2	
		Zero Page,X	SBC Oper,X	F5	2	
		Absolute	SBC Oper	ED	3	
		Absolute,X	SBC Oper,X	FD	3	
		Absolute,Y	SBC Oper,Y	F9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	SBC (Oper,X)	E1	2	
		(Indirect),Y	SBC (Oper),Y	F1	2	
SEC Set carry flag	1 → C	Implied	SEC	38	1	--1---
SED Set decimal mode	1 → D	Implied	SED	F8	1	----1-
SEI Set interrupt disable status	1 → I	Implied	SEI	78	1	---1--
STA Store accumulator in memory	A → M	Zero Page	STA Oper	85	2	------
		Zero Page,X	STA Oper,X	95	2	
		Absolute	STA Oper	8D	3	
		Absolute,X	STA Oper,X	9D	3	
		Absolute,Y	STA Oper,Y	99	3	
		(Indirect,X)	STA (Oper,X)	81	2	
		(indirect),Y	STA (Oper),Y	91	2	
STX Store index X in memory	X → M	Zero Page	STX Oper	86	2	------
		Zero Page,Y	STX Oper,Y	96	2	
		Absolute	STX Oper	8E	3	
STY Store index Y in memory	Y → M	Zero Page	STY Oper	84	2	------
		Zero Page,X	STY Oper,X	94	2	
		Absolute	STY Oper	8C	3	
TAX Transfer accumulator to index X	A → X	Implied	TAX	AA	1	√√----
TAY Transfer accumulator to index Y	A → Y	Implied	TAY	A8	1	√√----
TSX Transfer stack pointer to index X	S → X	Implied	TSX	BA	1	√√----

HEX OPERATION CODES

00 — BRK
01 — ORA — (Indirect, X)
02 — NOP
03 — NOP
04 — NOP
05 — ORA — Zero Page
06 — ASL — Zero Page
07 — NOP
08 — PHP
09 — ORA — Immediate
0A — ASL — Accumulator
0B — NOP
0C — NOP
0D — ORA — Absolute
0E — ASL — Absolute
0F — NOP
10 — BPL
11 — ORA — (Indirect), Y
12 — NOP
13 — NOP
14 — NOP
15 — ORA — Zero Page, X
16 — ASL — Zero Page, X
17 — NOP
18 — CLC
19 — ORA — Absolute, Y
1A — NOP
1B — NOP
1C — NOP
1D — ORA — Absolute, X
1E — ASL — Absolute, X
1F — NOP
20 — JSR
21 — AND — (Indirect, X)
22 — NOP
23 — NOP
24 — BIT — Zero Page
25 — AND — Zero Page
26 — ROL — Zero Page
27 — NOP
28 — PLP
29 — AND — Immediate
2A — ROL — Accumulator
2B — NOP
2C — BIT — Absolute
2D — AND — Absolute
2E — ROL — Absolute

2F — NOP
30 — BMI
31 — AND — (Indirect), Y
32 — NOP
33 — NOP
34 — NOP
35 — AND — Zero Page, X
36 — ROL — Zero Page, X
37 — NOP
38 — SEC
39 — AND — Absolute, Y
3A — NOP
3B — NOP
3C — NOP
3D — AND — Absolute, X
3E — ROL — Absolute, X
3F — NOP
40 — RTI
41 — EOR — (Indirect, X)
42 — NOP
43 — NOP
44 — NOP
45 — EOR — Zero Page
46 — LSR — Zero Page
47 — NOP
48 — PHA
49 — EOR — Immediate
4A — LSR — Accumulator
4B — NOP
4C — JMP — Absolute
4D — EOR — Absolute
4E — LSR — Absolute
4F — NOP
50 — BVC
51 — EOR (Indirect), Y
52 — NOP
53 — NOP
54 — NOP
55 — EOR — Zero Page, X
56 — LSR — Zero Page, X
57 — NOP
58 — CLI
59 — EOR — Absolute, Y
5A — NOP
5B — NOP
5C — NOP
5D — EOR — Absolute, X

5E — LSR — Absolute, X
5F — NOP
60 — RTS
61 — ADC — (Indirect, X)
62 — NOP
63 — NOP
64 — NOP
65 — ADC — Zero Page
66 — ROR — Zero Page
67 — NOP
68 — PLA
69 — ADC — Immediate
6A — ROR — Accumulator
6B — NOP
6C — JMP — Indirect
6D — ADC — Absolute
6E — ROR — Absolute
6F — NOP
70 — BVS
71 — ADC — (Indirect), Y
72 — NOP
73 — NOP
74 — NOP
75 — ADC — Zero Page, X
76 — ROR — Zero Page, X
77 — NOP
78 — SEI
79 — ADC — Absolute, Y
7A — NOP
7B — NOP
7C — NOP
7D — ADC — Absolute, X NOP
7E — ROR — Absolute, X NOP
7F — NOP
80 — NOP
81 — STA — (Indirect, X)
82 — NOP
83 — NOP
84 — STY — Zero Page
85 — STA — Zero Page
86 — STX — Zero Page
87 — NOP
88 — DEY
89 — NOP
8A — TXA
8B — NOP
8C — STY — Absolute

8D — STA — Absolute
8E — STX — Absolute
8F — NOP
90 — BCC
91 — STA — (Indirect), Y
92 — NOP
93 — NOP
94 — STY — Zero Page, X
95 — STA — Zero Page, X
96 — STX — Zero Page, Y
97 — NOP
98 — TYA
99 — STA — Absolute, Y
9A — TXS
9B — NOP
9C — NOP
9D — STA — Absolute, X
9E — NOP
9F — NOP
A0 — LDY — Immediate
A1 — LDA — (Indirect, X)
A2 — LDX — Immediate
A3 — NOP
A4 — LDY — Zero Page
A5 — LDA — Zero Page
A6 — LDX — Zero Page
A7 — NOP
A8 — TAY
A9 — LDA — Immediate
AA — TAX
AB — NOP
AC — LDY — Absolute
AD — LDA — Absolute
AE — LDX — Absolute
AF — NOP
B0 — BCS
B1 — LDA — (Indirect), Y
B2 — NOP
B3 — NOP

B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X
B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X
B6 — LDX — Zero Page, Y
B7 — NOP
B8 — CLV
B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y
BA — TSX
BB — NOP
BC — LDY — Absolute, X
BD — LDA — Absolute, X
BE — LDX — Absolute, Y
BF — NOP
C0 — CPY — Immediate
C1 — CMP — (Indirect, X)
C2 — NOP
C3 — NOP
C4 — CPY — Zero Page
C5 — CMP — Zero Page
C6 — DEC — Zero Page
C7 — NOP
C8 — INY
C9 — CMP — Immediate
CA — DEX
CB — NOP
CC — CPY — Absolute
CD — CMP — Absolute
CE — DEC — Absolute
CF — NOP
D0 — BNE
D1 — CMP — (Indirect), Y
D2 — NOP
D3 — NOP
D4 — NOP
D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X
D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X
D7 — NOP
D8 — CLD
D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y
DA — NOP

DB — NOP
DC — NOP
DD — CMP — Absolute, X
DE — DEC — Absolute, X
DF — NOP
E0 — CPX — Immediate
E1 — SBC — (Indirect, X)
E2 — NOP
E3 — NOP
E4 — CPX — Zero Page
E5 — SBC — Zero Page
E6 — INC — Zero Page
E7 — NOP
E8 — INX
E9 — SBC — Immediate
EA — NOP
EB — NOP
EC — CPX — Absolute
ED — SBC — Absolute
EE — INC — Absolute
EF — NOP
F0 — BEQ
F1 — SBC — (Indirect), Y
F2 — NOP
F3 — NOP
F4 — NOP
F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X
F6 — INC — Zero Page, X
F7 — NOP
F8 — SED
F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y
FA — NOP
FB — NOP
FC — NOP
FD — SBC — Absolute, X
FE — INC — Absolute, X
FF — NOP

APPLE II HARDWARE

INTRODUCTION

ITEMS YOU WILL NEED:

Your APPLE II board comes completely assembled and thoroughly tested.
You should have received the following:

a. 1 ea. APPLE II P.C. Board complete with
specified RAM memory.

b. 1 ea. d.c. power connector with cable.

c. 1 ea. 2" speaker with cable.

d. 1 ea. Preliminary Manual

e. 1 ea. Demonstration cassette tapes. (For 4K: 1 cassette (2 programs);
16K or greater: 3 cassettes.

f. 2 ea. 16 pin headers plugged into locations A7
and J14.

In addition you will need:

g. A color TV set (or B & W) equipped with a direct
video input connector for best performance or a com-
mercially available RF modulator such as a "Pixi-verter"[tm]
Higher channel (7-13) modulators generally provide
better system performance than lower channel modulators
(2-6).

h. The following power supplies (NOTE: current ratings
do not include any capacity for peripheral boards.):

1. +12 Volts with the following current capacity:

a. For 4K or 16K systems - 350mA.

b. For 8K, 20K or 32K   - 550mA.

c. For 12K, 24K, 36K or 48K - 850mA.

2. +5 Volts at 1.6 amps

3. -5 Volts at 10mA.

4. OPTIONAL: If -12 Volts is required by your keyboard.
(If using an APPLE II supplied keyboard, you will
need -12V at 50mA.)

i. An audio cassette recorder such as a Panasonic model RQ-309 DS which is used to load and save programs.

j. An ASCII encoded keyboard equipped with a "reset" switch.

k. Cable for the following:

1. Keyboard to APPLE II P.C.B.

2. Video out 75 ohm cable to TV or modulator

3. Cassette to APPLE II P.C.B. (1 or 2)

Optionally you may desire:

l. Game paddles or pots with cables to APPLE II Game I/0 connector. (Several demo programs use PDL(0) and "Pong" also uses PDL(1).

m. Case to hold all the above

Final Assembly Steps

1. Using detailed information on pin functions in hardware section of manual, connect power supplies to d.c. cable assembly. Use both ground wires to miminize resistance. With cable assembly disconnected from APPLE II mother board, turn on power supplies and verify voltages on connector pins. Improper supply connections such as reverse polarity can severely damage your APPLE II.

2. Connect keyboard to APPLE II by unplugging leader in location A7 and wiring keyboard cable to it, then plug back into APPLE II P.C.B.

3. Plug in speaker cable.

4. Optionally connect one or two game paddles using leader supplied in socket located at J14.

5. Connect video cable.

6. Connect cable from cassette monitor output to APPLE II cassette input.

7. Check to see that APPLE II board is not contacting any conducting surface.

8. With power supplies turned off, plug in power connector to mother board then recheck all cableing.

POWER UP

1. Turn power on. If power supplies overload, immediately turn off
    and recheck power cable wiring. Verify operating supply voltages
    are within ±3% of nominal value.

2. You should now have random video display. If not check video
    level pot on mother board, full clockwise is maximum video out-
    put. Also check video cables for opens and shorts. Check
    modulator if you are using one.

3. Press reset button. Speaker should beep and a "*" prompt
    character with a blinking cursor should appear in lower
    left on screen.

4. Press "esc" button, release and type a "@" (shift-P) to
    clear screen.. You may now try "Monitor" commands if you
    wish. See details in "Monitor" software section.

RUNNING BASIC

1. Turn power on; press reset button; type "control B" and press
    return button. A ">" prompt character should appear on screen
    indicating that you are now in BASIC.

2. Load one of the supplied demonstration cassettes into recorder.
    Set recorder level to approximately 5 and start recorder. Type
    "LOAD" and return. First beep indicates that APPLE II has found
    beginning of program; second indicates end of program followed
    by ">" character on screen. If error occurs on loading, try a
    different demo tape or try changing cassette volume level.

3. Type RUN and carriage return to execute demonstration program.
    Listings of these are included in the last section of this
    manual.

Switching power supplies generally have both advantages and peculiarities not generally found in conventional power supplies. The Apple II user is urged to review this section.

Your Apple II is equipped with an AC line
voltage filter and a three wire AC line cord.
It is important to make sure that the third
wire is returned to earth ground. Use a con-
tinuity checker or ohmmeter to ensure that
the third wire is actually returned to earth.
Continuity should be checked for between the
power supply case and an available water pipe
for example. The line filter, which is of a
type approved by domestic (U.L. CSA) and
international (VDE) agencies must be returned
to earth to function properly and to avoid
potential shock hazards.

The APPLE II power supply is of the "flyback" switching type. In this system, the AC line is rectified directly, "chopped up" by a high frequency oscillator and coupled through a small transformer to the diodes, filters, etc., and results in four low voltage DC supplies to run APPLE II. The transformer isolates the DC supplies from the line and is provided with several shields to prevent "hash" from being coupled into the logic or peripherals. In the "flyback" system, the energy transferred through from the AC line side to DC supply side is stored in the transformer's inductance on one-half of the operating cycle, then transferred to the output filter capacitors on the second half of the operating cycle. Similar systems are used in TV sets to provide horizontal deflection and the high voltages to run the CRT.

Regulation of the DC voltages is accomplished by controlling the frequency at which the converter operates; the greater the output power needed, the lower the frequency of the converter. If the converter is overloaded, the operating frequency will drop into the audible range with squeels and squawks warning the user that something is wrong.

All DC outputs are regulated at the same time and one of the four outputs (the +5 volt supply) is compared to a reference voltage with the difference error fed to a feedback loop to assist the oscillator in running at the needed frequency. Since all DC outputs are regulated together, their voltages will reflect to some extent unequal loadings.

For example; if the +5 supply is loaded very heavily, then all other supply voltages will increase in voltage slightly; conversely, very light loading on the +5 supply and heavy loading on the +12 supply will cause both it and the others to sag lightly. If precision reference voltages are needed for peripheral applications, they should be provided for in the peripheral design.

In general, the APPLE II design is conservative with respect to component ratings and operating termperatures. An over-voltage crowbar shutdown system and an auxilliary control feedback loop are provided to ensure that even very unlikely failure modes will not cause damage to the APPLE II computer system. The over-voltage protection references to the DC output voltages only. The AC line voltage input must be within the specified limits, i.e., 107V to 132V.

```
Under no circumstances, should more
than 140 VAC be applied to the input
of the power supply.  Permanent damage
will result.
```

Since the output voltages are controlled by changing the operating frequency of the converter, and since that frequency has an upper limit determined by the switching speed of power transistors, there then must be a minimum load on the supply; the Apple II board with minimum memory (4K) is well above that minimum load. However, with the board disconnected, there is no load on the supply, and the internal over-voltage protection circuitry causes the supply to turn off. A 9 watt load distributed roughly 50-50 between the +5 and +12 supply is the nominal minimum load.

Nominal load current ratios are: The +12V supply load is ½ that of the +5V.
The - 5V supply load is 1/10 that of the +5V.
The -12V supply load is 1/10 that of the +5V.

The supply voltages are +5.0 $\pm$ 0.15 volts, +11.8 $\pm$ 0.5 volts, -12.0 $\pm$ 1V, -5.2 $\pm$ 0.5 volts. The tolerances are greatly reduced when the loads are close to nominal.

The Apple II power supply will power the Apple II board and all present and forthcoming plug-in cards, we recommend the use of low power TTL, CMOS, etc. so that the total power drawn is within the thermal limits of the entire system. In particular, the user should keep the total power drawn by any one card to less than 1.5 watts, and the total current drawn by all the cards together within the following limits:

```
+ 12V  -  use no more than 250 mA
+  5V  -  use no more than 500 mA
-  5V  -  use no more than 200 mA
- 12V  -  use no more than 200 mA
```

The power supply is allowed to run indefinetly under short circuit or open circuit conditions.

```
CAUTION:  There are dangerous high
voltages inside the power supply
case.  Much of the internal circuitry
is NOT isolated from the power line,
and special equipment is needed for
service.  NO REPAIR BY THE USER IS
ALLOWED.
```

Accessories are available to aid the user in connecting the Apple II system to a home color TV with a minimum of trouble. These units are called "RF Modulators" and they generate a radio frequency signal corresponding to the carrier of one or two of the lower VHF television bands; 61.25 MHz (channel 3) or 67.25 MHz (channel 4). This RF signal is then modulated with the composite video signal generated by the Apple II.

Users report success with the following RF modulators:

> the "PixieVerter" (a kit)
> ATV Research
> 13th and Broadway
> Dakota City, Nebraska 68731

> the "TV-1"   (a kit)
> UHF Associates
> 6037 Haviland Ave.
> Whittier, CA   90601

> the "Sup-r-Mod" by   (assembled & tested)
> M&R Enterprises
> P.O. Box 1011
> Sunnyvale, CA   94088

> the RF Modulator   (a P.C. board)
> Electronics Systems
> P.O. Box 212ʼ
> Burlingame, CA   94010

Most of the above are available through local computer stores.

The Apple II owner who wishes to use one of these RF Modulators should read the following notes carefully.

All these modulators have a free running transistor oscillator. The M&R Enterprises unit is pre-tuned to Channel 4. The PixieVerter and the TV-1 have tuning by means of a jumper on the P.C. board and a small trimmer capacitor. All these units have a residual FM which may cause trouble if the TV set in use has a IF pass band with excessive ripple. The unit from M&R has the least residual FM.

All the units except the M&R unit are kits to be built and tuned by the customer. All the kits are incomplete to some extent. The unit from Electronics Systems is just a printed circuit board with assembly instructions. The kits from UHF Associates and ATV do not have an RF cable or a shielded box or a balun transformer, or an antenna switch. The M&R unit is complete.

Some cautions are in order. The Apple II, by virtue of its color graphics capability, operates the TV set in a linear mode rather than the 100% contrast mode satisfactory for displaying text. For this reason, radio frequency inter-ference (RFI) generated by a computer (or peripherals) will beat with the

carrier of the RF modulator to produce faint spurious background patterns (called "worms") This RFI "trash" must be of quite a low level if worms are to be prevented. In fact, these spurious beats must be 40 to 50db below the signal level to reduce worms to an acceptable level. When it is remembered that only 2 to 6 mV (across 300Ω) is presented to the VHF input of the TV set, then stray RFI getting into the TV must be less than 50μV to obtain a clean picture. Therefore we recommend that a good, co-ax cable be used to carry the signal from any modulator to the TV set, such as RG/59u (with copper shield), Belden #8241 or an equivalent miniature type such as Belden #8218. We also recommend that the RF modulator be enclosed in a tight metal box (an unpainted die cast aluminum box such as Pomona #2428). Even with these precautions, some trouble may be encountered with worms, and can be greatly helped by threading the coax cable conn- ecting the modulator to the TV set repeatedly through a Ferrite toroid core. Apple Computer supplies these cores in a kit, along with a 4 circuit connector/cable assembly to match the auxilliary video connector found on the Apple II board. This kit has order number A2M010X. The M&R "Sup-r-Mod" is supplied with a coax cable and toroids.

Any computer containing fast switching logic and high frequency clocks will radiate some radio frequency energy. Apple II is equipped with a good line filter and many other precautions have been taken to minimize radiated energy. The user is urged not to connect "antennas" to this computer; wires strung about carrying clocks and/data will act as antennas, and subsequent radiated energy may prove to be a nuisance.

Another caution concerns possible long term effects on the TV picture tube. Most home TV sets have "Brightness" and "Contrast" controls with a very wide range of adjustment. When an un-changing picture is displayed with high brightness for a long period ,a faint discoloration of the TV CRT   may occur as an inverse pattern observable with the TV set turned off. This condition may be avoided by keeping the "Brightness" turned down slightly and "Contrast" moderate.

A SIMPLE SERIAL OUTPUT

The Apple II is equipped with a 16 pin DIP socket most frequently used to connect potentiometers, switches, etc. to the computer for paddle control and other game applications. This socket, located at J-14, has outputs available as well. With an appropriate machine language program, these output lines may be used to serialize data in a format suitable for a teletype. A suitable interface circuit must be built since the outputs are merely LSTTL and won't run a teletype without help. Several interface circuits are discussed below and the user may pick the one best suited to his needs.

The ASR - 33 Teletype

The ASR - 33 Teletype of recent vintage has a transistor circuit to drive its solenoids. This circuit is quite easy to interface to, since it is provided with its own power supply. (Figure 1a) It can be set up for a 20mA current loop and interfaced as follows (whether or not the teletype is strapped for full duplex or half duplex operation):

a) The yellow wire and purple wire should both go to terminal 9 of Terminal Strip X. If the purple wire is going to terminal 8, then remove it and relocate it at terminal 9. This is necessary to change from the 60mA current loop to the 20mA current loop.

b) Above Terminal Strip X is a connector socket identified as "2". Pin 8 is the input line + or high; Pin 7 is the input line - or low. This connector mates with a Molex receptacle model 1375 #03-09-2151 or #03-09-2153. Recommended terminals are Molex #02-09-2136. An alternate connection method is via spade lugs to Terminal Strip X, terminal 7 (the + input line) and 6 (the - input line).

c) The following circuit can be built on a 16 pin DIP component carrier and then plugged into the Apple's 16 pin socket found at J-14: (The junction of the 3.3k resistor and the transistor base lead is floating). Pins 16 and 9 are used as tie points as they are unconnected on the Apple board. (Figure 1a).

The "RS - 232 Interface"

For this interface to be legitimate, it is necessary to twice invert the signal appearing at J-14 pin 15 and have it swing more than 5 volts both above and below ground. The following circuit does that but requires that both +12 and -12 supplies be used. (Figure 2) Snipping off pins on the DIP-component carrier will allow the spare terminals to be used for tie points. The output ground connects to pin 7 of the DB-25 connector. The signal output connects to pin 3 of the DB-25 connector. The "protective" ground wire normally found on pin 1 of the DB-25 connector may be connected to the Apple's base plate if desired. Placing a #4 lug under one of the four power supply mounting screws is perhaps the simplest method. The +12 volt supply is easily found on the auxiliary Video connector (see Figure S-11 or Figure 7 of the manual). The -12 volt supply may be found at pin 33 of the peripheral connectors (see Figure 4) or at the power supply connector (see Figure 5 of the manual).

A Serial Out Machine Center Language Program

Once the appropriate circuit has been selected and constructed a machine language program is needed to drive the circuit. Figure 3 lists such a teletype output machine language routine. It can be used in conjunction with an Integer BASIC program that doesn't require page $3ØØ hex of memory. This program resides in memory from $37Ø to $3E9. Columns three and four of the listing show the op-code used. To enter this program into the Apple II the following procedure is followed:

Entering Machine Language Program

1. Power up Apple II

2. Depress and release the "RESET" key. An asterick and flashing cursor should appear on the left hand side of the screen below the random text matrix.

3. Now type in the data from columns one, two and three for each line from $37Ø to Ø3E9. For example, type in "37Ø: A9 82" and then depress and release the "RETURN" key. Then repeat this procedure for the data at $372 and on until you complete entering the program.

Executing this Program

1. From BASIC a CALL 88Ø ($37Ø) will start the execution of this program. It will use the teletype or suitable 8Ø column printer as the primary output device.

2. PR#0 will inactivate the printer transfering control back to the Video monitor as the primary output device.

3. In Monitor mode $370G activates the printer and hitting the "RESET" key exits the program.

Saving the Machine Language Program

After the machine language program has been entered and checked for accuracy it should, for convenience, be saved on tape - that is unless you prefer to enter it by keyboard every time you want to use it.

The way it is saved is as follows:

1. Insert a blank program cassette into the tape recorder and rewind it.

2. Hit the "RESET" key. The system should move into Monitor mode. An asterick "*" and flashing cursor should appear on the left-hand side of the screen.

3. Type in "370.03E9W 370.03E9W".

4. Start the tape recorder in record mode and depress the "RETURN" key.

5. When the program has been written to tape, the asterick and flashing cursor will reappear.

The Program

After entering, checking and saving the program perform the following procedure to get a feeling of how the program is used:

1. B^C (control B) into BASIC

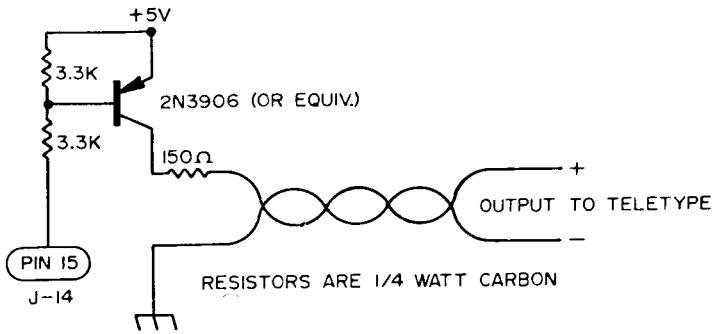2. Turn the teletype (printer on)

3. Type in the following

       10 CALL 880
       15 PRINT "ABCD...XYZ011123456789"
       20 PR#0
       25 END

4. Type in RUN and hit the "RETURN" key. The text in line 15 should be printed on the teletype and control is returned to the keyboard and Video monitor.

Line 1Ø activates the teletype machine routine and all "PRINT" statements following it will be printed to the teletype until a PR#Ø statement is encountered. Then the text in line 15 will appear on the teletype's output. Line 2Ø deactivates the printer and the program ends on line 25.
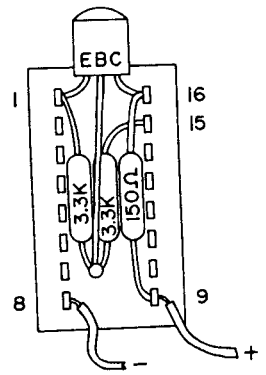
Conclusion

With the circuits and machine language program described in this paper the user may develop a relatively simple serial output interface to an ASR-33 or RS-232 compatible printers. This circuit can be activated through BASIC or monitor modes. And is a valuable addition to any users program library.

+5V

3.3K

2N3906 (OR EQUIV.)
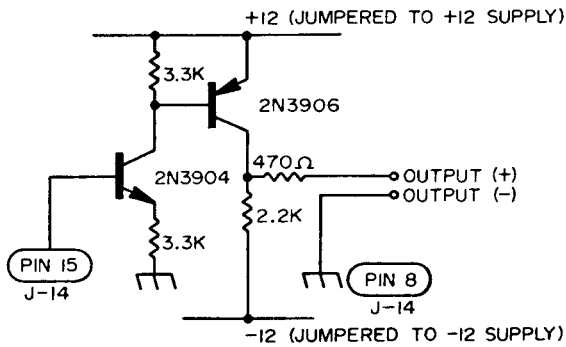
3.3K

150Ω

PIN 15
J-14

OUTPUT TO TELETYPE

+

−

RESISTORS ARE 1/4 WATT CARBON

EBC

1

8

16

15

9

3.3K 3.3K 150Ω

− +

(a)

(b)

FIGURE 1   ASR-33

+12 (JUMPERED TO +12 SUPPLY)

3.3K

2N3906

2N3904

470Ω

OUTPUT (+)
OUTPUT (−)

2.2K

3.3K

PIN 15
J-14

PIN 8
J-14

−12 (JUMPERED TO −12 SUPPLY)

FIGURE 2   RS-232

118

```
                              1        TITLE 'TELETYPE DRIVER ROUTINES'
                              2        *************************
                              3        *                       *
                              4        *       TTYDRIVER:       *
                              5        *     TELETYPE OUTPUT    *
                              6        *     ROUTINE FOR 72     *
                              7        *     COLUMN PRINT WITH  *
                              8        *     BASIC LIST         *
                              9        *                       *
                             10        *  COPYRIGHT 1977 BY:    *
                             11        *  APPLE COMPUTER INC.   *
                             12        *       11/18/77         *
                             13        *                       *
                             14        *      R. WIGGINTON      *
                             15        *      S. WOZNIAK        *
                             16        *                       *
                             17        *************************
                             18     WNDWDTH    EQU   $21          ;FOR APPLE-II
                             19     CH         EQU   $24          ;CURSOR HORIZ.
                             20     CSWL       EQU   $36          ;CHAR. OUT SWITCH
                             21     YSAVE      EQU   $778
                             22     COLCNT     EQU   $7F8         ;COLUMN COUNT LOC.
                             23     MARK       EQU   $C058
                             24     SPACE      EQU   $C059
                             25     WAIT       EQU   $FCA8
                             26                ORG   $370
***WARNING: OPERAND OVERFLOW IN LINE 27
0370:  A9 82             27     TTINIT:    LDA   #TTOUT
0372:  85 36             28                STA   CSWL         ;POINT TO TTY ROUTINES
0374:  A9 03             29                LDA   #TTOUT/256   ;HIGH BYTE
0376:  85 37             30                STA   CSWL+1
0378:  A9 48             31                LDA   #72          ;SET WINDOW WIDTH
037A:  85 21             32                STA   WNDWDTH      ;TO NUMBER COLUMNS ONY
037C:  A5 24             33                LDA   CH
037E:  8D F8 07          34                STA   COLCNT       ;WHERE WE ARE NOW.
0381:  60                35                RTS
0382:  48                36     TTOUT:     PHA                ;SAVE TWICE
0383:  48                37                PHA                ;ON STACK.
0384:  AD F8 07          38     TTOUT2:    LDA   COLCNT       ;CHECK FOR A TAB.
0387:  C5 24             39                CMP   CH
0389:  68                40                PLA                ;RESTORE OUTPUT CHAR.
038A:  B0 03             41                BCS   TESTCTRL     ;IF C SET, NO TAB
038C:  48                42                PHA
038D:  A9 A0             43                LDA   #$A0         ;PRINT A SPACE.
038F:  2C C0 03          44     TESTCTRL:  BIT   RTS1         ;TRICK TO DETERMINE
0392:  F0 03             45                BEQ   PRNTIT       ;IF CONTROL CHAR.
0394:  EE F8 07          46                INC   COLCNT       ;IF NOT, ADD ONE TO CH
0397:  20 C1 03          47     PRNTIT:    JSR   DOCHAR       ;PRINT THE CHAR ON TTY
039A:  68                48                PLA                ;RESTORE CHAR
039B:  48                49                PHA                ;AND PUT BACK ON STACK
039C:  90 E6             50                BCC   TTOUT2       ;DO MORE SPACES FOR TA
039E:  49 0D             51                EOR   #$0D         ;CHECK FOR CAR RET.
03A0:  0A                52                ASL   A            ;ELIM PARITY
03A1:  D0 0D             53                BNE   FINISH       ;IF NOT CR, DONE.
```

FIGURE 3a

119

```
3:42 P.M., 11/18/1977
03A3:   8D F8 07 54                 STA    COLCNT        ;CLEAR COLUMN COUNT
03A6:   A9 8A    55                 LDA    #$8A          ;NOW DO LINE FEED
03A8:   20 C1 03 56                 JSR    DOCHAR
03AB:   A9 58    57                 LDA    #$53
03AD:   20 A8 FC 58                 JSR    WAIT          ;200MSEC DELAY FOR LI█
03B0:   AD F8 07 59     FINISH:     LDA    COLCNT        ;CHECK IF IN MARGIN
03B3:   F0 08    60                 BEQ    SETCH         ;FOR CR, RESET CH
03B5:   E5 21    61                 SBC    WNDWDTH       ;IF SO, CARRY SET.
03B7:   E9 F7    62                 SBC    #$F7
03B9:   90 04    63                 BCC    RETURN
03BB:   69 1F    64                 ADC    #$1F          ;ADJUST CH
03BD:   85 24    65     SETCH:      STA    CH
03BF:   68       66     RETURN:     PLA
03C0:   60       67     RTS1:       RTS                  ;RETURN TO CALLER
                 68     * HERE IS THE TELETYPE PRINT A CHARACTER ROUTINE:
03C1:   8C 78 07 69     DOCHAR:     STY    YSAVE
03C4:   08       70                 PHP                  ;SAVE STATUS.
03C5:   A0 0B    71                 LDY    #$0B          ;11 BITS (1 START, 8 █
03C7:   18       72                 CLC                  ;BEGIN WITH SPACE (ST█
03C8:   48       73     TTOUT3:     PHA                  ;SAVE A REG AND SET FO█
03C9:   B0 05    74                 BCS    MARKOUT
03CB:   AD 59 C0 75                 LDA    SPACE         ;SEND A SPACE
03CE:   90 03    76                 BCC    TTOUT4
03D0:   AD 58 C0 77     MARKOUT:    LDA    MARK          ;SEND A MARK
03D3:   A9 D7    78     TTOUT4:     LDA    #$D7          ;DELAY 9.091 MSEC FOR
03D5:   48       79     DLY1:       PHA                  ;110 BAUD
03D6:   A9 20    80                 LDA    #$20
03D8:   4A       81     DLY2:       LSR    A
03D9:   90 FD    82                 BCC    DLY2
03DB:   68       83                 PLA
03DC:   E9 01    84                 SBC    #$01
03DE:   D0 F5    85                 BNE    DLY1
03E0:   68       86                 PLA
03E1:   6A       87                 ROR    A             ;NEXT BIT (STOP BITS █
03E2:   88       88                 DEY                  LOOP 11 BITS.
03E3:   D0 E3    89                 BNE    TTOUT3
03E5:   AC 78 07 90                 LDY    YSAVE         ;RESTORE Y-REG.
03E8:   28       91                 PLP                  ;RESTORE STATUS
03E9:   60       92                 RTS                  ;RETURN
********SUCCESSFUL ASSEMBLY: NO ERRORS
```

FIGURE 3b

```
CROSS-REFERNCE: TELETYPE DRIVER ROUTINES
CH          0024      0033 0039 0065
COLCNT      07F8      0034 0038 0046 0054 0059
CSWL        0036      0028 0030
DLY1        03D5      0085
DLY2        03D8      0082
DOCHAR      03C1      0047 0056
FINISH      03B0      0053
MARK        C058      0077
MARKOUT     03D0      0074
PRNTIT      0397      0045
RETURN      03BF      0063
RTS1        03C0      0044
SETCH       03BD      0060
SPACE       C059      0075
TESTCTRL    038F      0041
TTINIT      0370
TTOUT       0382      0027 0029
TTOUT2      0384      0050
TTOUT3      03C8      0089
TTOUT4      03D3      0076
WAIT        FCA8      0058
WNDWDTH     0021      0032 0061
YSAVE       0778      0069 0090
ILE:
```

FIGURE 3c

INTERFACING THE APPLE

This section defines the connections by which external devices are attached to the APPLE II board. Included are pin diagrams, signal descriptions, loading constraints and other useful information.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Figure 1A APPLE II Board-Complete View
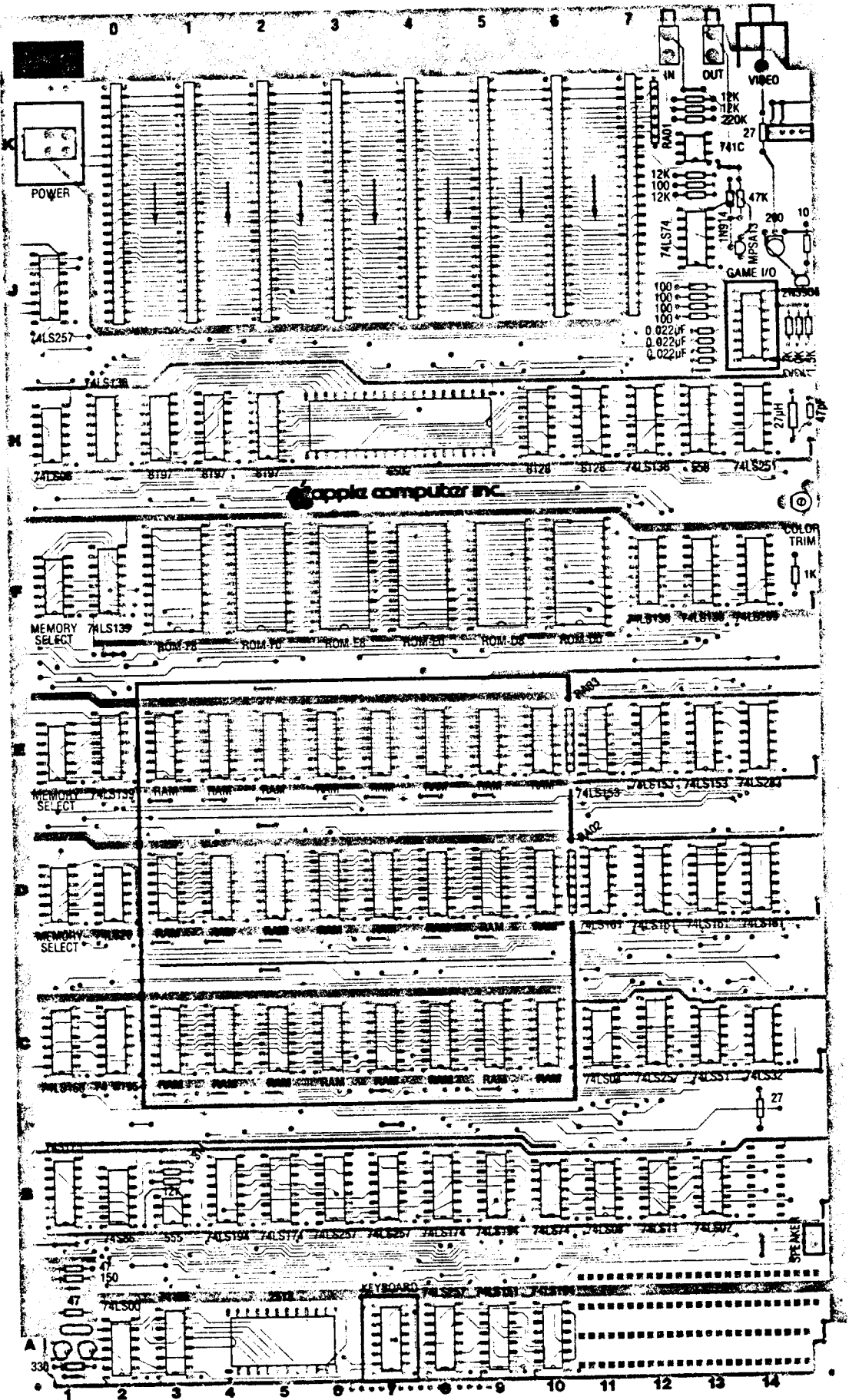
Figure 1B Connector Location Detail
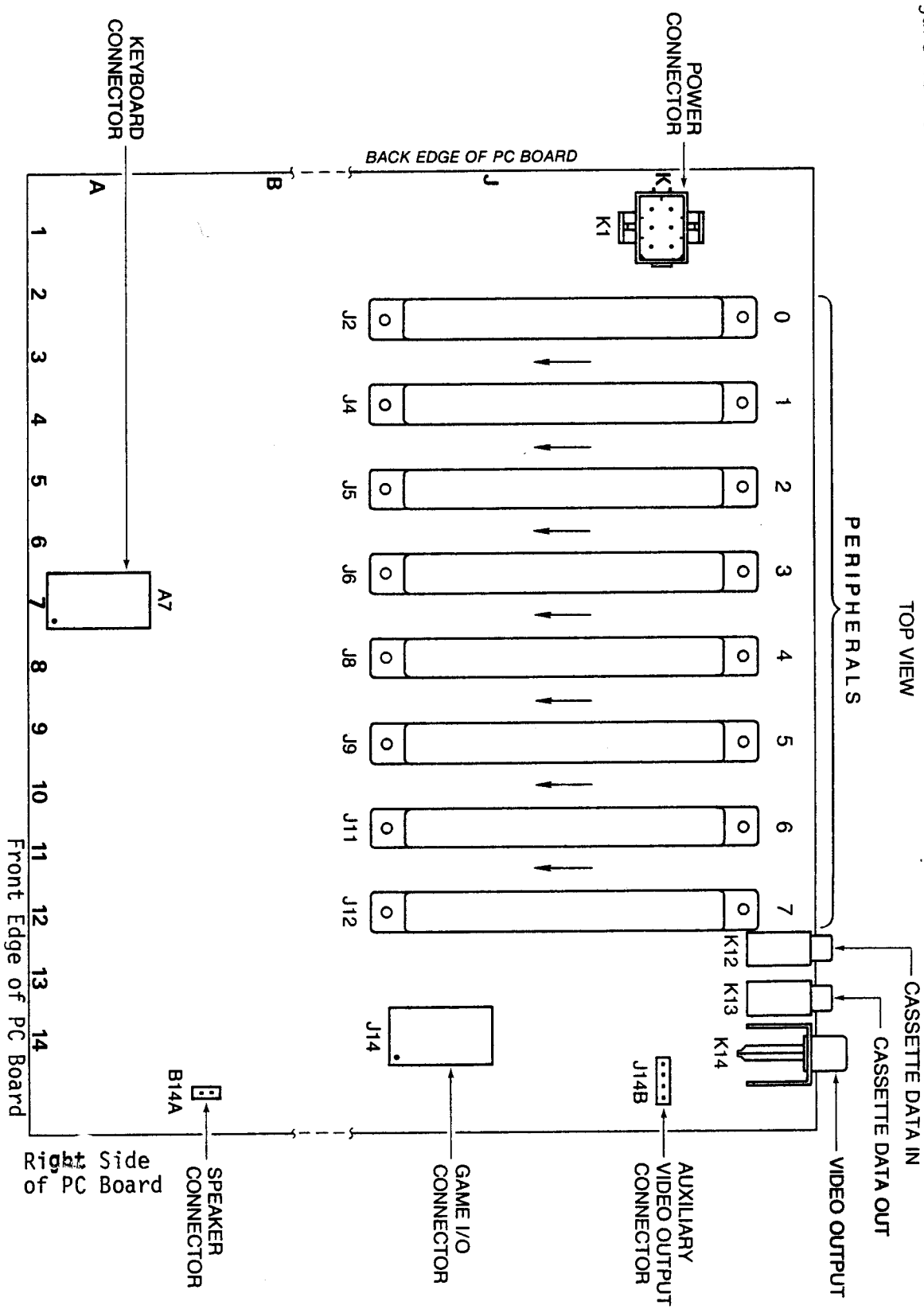
CASSETTE JACKS

A convenient means for interfacing an inexpensive audio cassette tape recorder to the APPLE II is provided by these two standard (3.5mm) miniature phone jacks located at the back of the APPLE II board.

CASSETTE DATA IN JACK: Designed for connection to the "EARPHONE" or "MONITOR" output found on most audio cassette tape recorders. V_{IN}=1Vpp (nominal), Z_{IN}=12K Ohms. Located at K12 as illustrated in Figure 1.

CASSETTE DATA OUT JACK: Designed for connection to the "MIC" or "MICROPHONE" input found on most audio cassette tape recorders. V_{OUT}=25 mV into 100 Ohms, Z_{OUT}=100 Ohms. Located at K13 as illustrated in Figure 1.

GAME I/O CONNECTOR

The Game I/O Connector provides a means for connecting paddle controls, lights and switches to the APPLE II for use in controlling video games, etc. It is a 16 pin IC socket located at J14 and is illustrated in Figure 1 and 2.

Figure 2   **GAME I/O CONNECTOR**

TOP VIEW
(Front Edge of PC Board

+5V	1		16	N.C.
SW0	2		15	AN0
SW1	3		14	AN1
SW2	4		13	AN2
C040 STB	5		12	AN3
PDL0	6		11	PDL3
PDL2	7		10	PDL1
GND	8		9	N.C.

LOCATION J14

125
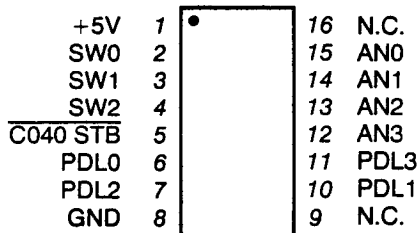
SIGNAL DESCRIPTIONS FOR GAME I/O

AN0-AN3:
    8 addresses (C058-C05F) are assigned to selectively "SET" or "CLEAR" these four "ANNUNCIATOR" outputs. Envisioned to control indicator lights, each is a 74LSxx series TTL output and must be buffered if used to drive lamps.

C040 STB:
    A utility strobe output. Will go low during $\emptyset_2$ of a read or write cycle to addresses C040-C04F. This is a 74LSxx series TTL output.

GND:
    System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.

NC:
    No connection.

PDL0-PDL3:
    Paddle control inputs. Requires a 0-150K ohm variable resistance and +5V for each paddle. Internal 100 ohm resistors are provided in series with external pot to prevent excess current if pot goes completely to zero ohms.

SW0-SW2:
    Switch inputs. Testable by reading from addresses C061-C063 (or C069-C06B). These are uncommitted 74LSxx series inputs.

+5V:
    Positive 5-Volt supply. To avoid burning out the connector pin, current drain MUST be less than 100mA.

KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

This connector provides the means for connecting as ASCII keyboard to the APPLE II board. It is a 16 pin IC socket located at A7 and is illustrated in Figures 1 and 3.

Figure 3   KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

TOP VIEW
(Front Edge of PC Board)

+5V	1	16	N.C.
STROBE	2	15	−12V
RESET	3	14	N.C.
N.C.	4	13	B2
B6	5	12	B1
B5	6	11	B4
B7	7	10	B3
GND	8	9	N.C.
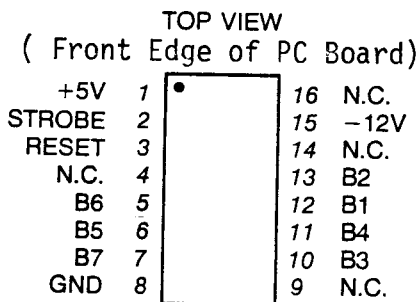
LOCATION A7

SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR KEYBOARD INTERFACE

B1-B7:   7 bit ASCII data from keyboard, positive logic (high level=
          "1"), TTL logic levels expected.

GND: System circuit ground. Ø Volt line from power supply.

NC: No connection.

RESET: System reset input. Requires switch closure to ground.

STROBE: Strobe output from keyboard. The APPLE II recognizes the
          positive going edge of the incoming strobe.

+5V: Positive 5-Volt supply. To avoid burning out the connector
          pin, current drain MUST be less than 1ØØmA.

-12V: Negative 12-Volt supply. Keyboard should draw less than
          50mA.

PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

The eight Peripheral Connectors mounted near the back edge of the
APPLE II board provide a convenient means of connecting expansion
hardware and peripheral devices to the APPLE II I/O Bus. These are
Winchester #2HW25CØ-111 (or equivalent) 5Ø pin card edge connectors
with pins on .1Ø" centers. Location and pin outs are illustrated in
Figures 1 and 4.

SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR PERIPHERAL I/O

AØ-A15:   16 bit system address bus. Addresses are set up by the
                65Ø2 within 3ØØnS after the beginning of $\emptyset_1$. These lines
                will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

DEVICE SELECT: Sixteen addresses are set aside for each peripheral
                connector. A read or write to such an address will
                send pin 41 on the selected connector low during $\emptyset_2$
                (5ØØnS). Each will drive 4 standard TTL loads.

DØ-D7:   8 bit system data bus. During a write cycle data is
                set up by the 65Ø2 less than 3ØØnS after the beginning
                of $\emptyset_2$. During a read cycle the 65Ø2 expects data to
                be ready no less than 1ØØnS before the end of $\emptyset_2$.
                These lines will drive up to a total of 8 total low
                power schottky TTL loads.

DMA: Direct Memory Access control output. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.

DMA IN: Direct Memory Access daisy chain input from higher priority peripheral devices. Will present no more than 4 standard TTL loads to the driving device.

DMA OUT: Direct Memory Access daisy chain output to lower priority peripheral devices. This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads.

GND: System circuit ground. $\emptyset$ Volt line from power supply.

INH: Inhibit Line. When a device pulls this line low, all ROM's on board are disabled (Hex addressed D$\emptyset\emptyset\emptyset$ through FFFF). This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.

INT IN: Interrupt daisy chain input from higher priority peripheral devices. Will present no more than 4 standard TTL loads to the driving device.

INT OUT: Interrupt daisy chain output to lower priority peripheral devices. This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads.

I/O SELECT: 256 addresses are set aside for each peripheral connector (see address map in "MEMORY" section). A read or write of such an address will send pin 1 on the selected connector low during $\emptyset_2$ (5$\emptyset\emptyset$nS). This line will drive 4 standard TTL loads.

I/O STROBE: Pin 20 on all peripheral connectors will go low during $\emptyset_2$ of a read or write to any address C8$\emptyset\emptyset$-CFFF. This line will drive a total of 4 standard TTL loads.

IRQ: Interrupt request line to the 65$\emptyset$2. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output. It is active low.

NC: No connection.

NMI: Non Maskable Interrupt request line to the 65$\emptyset$2. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output. It is active low.

Q_3: A 1MHz (nonsymmetrical) general purpose timing signal. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

RDY: "Ready" line to the 65$\emptyset$2. This line should change only during $\emptyset_1$, and when low will halt the microprocessor at the next READ cycle. This line has a 3K Ohm pullup to +5V and should be driven with an open collector output.

RES: Reset line from "RESET" key on keyboard. Active low. Will drive 2 MOS loads per Peripheral Connector.

R/$\overline{\text{W}}$:   READ/WRITE line from 6502. When high indicates that a read cycle is in progress, and when low that a write cycle is in progress. This line will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

USER 1:   The function of this line will be described in a later document.

$\emptyset_0$:   Microprocessor phase $\emptyset$ clock. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

$\emptyset_1$:   Phase 1 clock, complement of $\emptyset_0$. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

7M: Seven MHz high frequency clock. Will drive up to a total of 16 standard TTL loads.

+12V: Positive 12-Volt supply.

+5V: Possitive 5-Volt supply

-5V: Negative 5-Volt supply.

-12V: Negative 12-Volt supply.

POWER CONNECTOR

The four voltages required by the APPLE II are supplied via this AMP #9-35028-1,6 pin connector. See location and pin out in Figures 1 and 5.

PIN DESCRIPTION

GND: (2 pins) system circuit ground. $\emptyset$ Volt line from power supply.

+12V: Positive 12-Volt line from power supply.

+5V: Positive 5-Volt line from power supply.

-5V: Negative 5-Volt line from power supply.

-12V: Negative 5-Volt line from power supply.

Figure 4   PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS
(EIGHT OF EACH)

TOP VIEW
PINOUT (Back Edge of PC Board)

GND	26		25	+5V
DMA IN	27		24	DMA OUT
INT IN	28		23	INT OUT
$\overline{NMI}$	29		22	$\overline{DMA}$
$\overline{IRQ}$	30		21	RDY
$\overline{RES}$	31		20	$\overline{I/O\ STROBE}$
$\overline{INH}$	32		19	N.C.
$-12V$	33		18	R/W
$-5V$	34		17	A15
N.C.	35		16	A14
7M	36		15	A13
Q3	37		14	A12
Φ1	38		13	A11
USER 1	39		12	A10
Φ0	40		11	A9
$\overline{DEVICE\ SELECT}$	41		10	A8
D7	42		9	A7
D6	43		8	A6
D5	44		7	A5
D4	45		6	A4
D3	46		5	A3
D2	47		4	A2
D1	48		3	A1
D0	49		2	A0
+12V	50		1	$\overline{I/O\ SELECT}$

(Toward Front Edge of PC Board)
LOCATIONS J2 TO J12

Figure 5   POWER CONNECTOR

TOP VIEW
PINOUT
(Toward Right Side of PC Board)

(BLUE/WHITE WIRE) $-12V$ 5   6 $-5V$ (BLUE WIRE)

(ORANGE WIRE) $+5V$ 3   4 $+12V$ (ORANGE/WHITE WIRE)

(BLACK WIRE) GND   1   2   GND (BLACK WIRE)

LOCATION K1

130
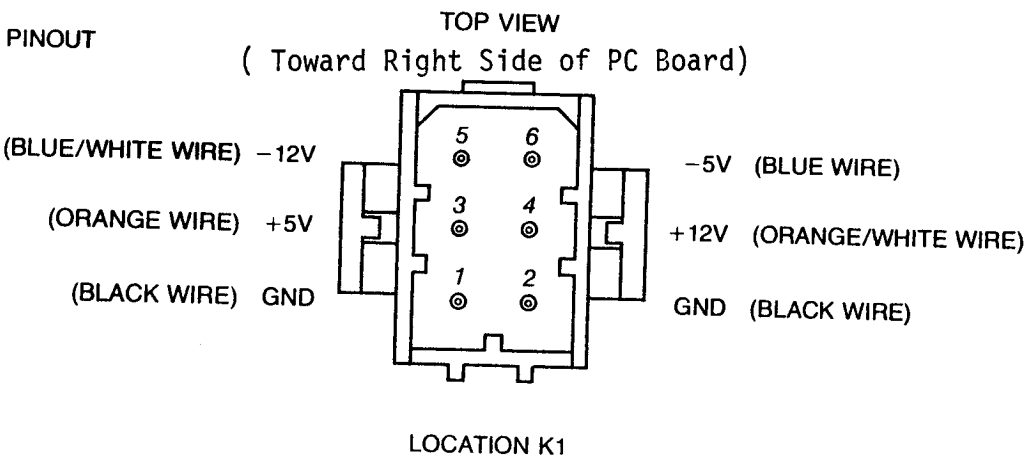
SPEAKER CONNECTOR

This is a MOLEX KK 1ØØ series connector with two .25" square pins on
.1Ø" centers. See location and pin out in Figures 1 and 6.

SIGNAL DESCRIPTION FOR SPEAKER

+5V: System +5 Volts

SPKR: Output line to speaker. Will deliver about .5 watt into
            8 Ohms.

Figure 6

SPEAKER CONNECTOR

LOCATION B14A
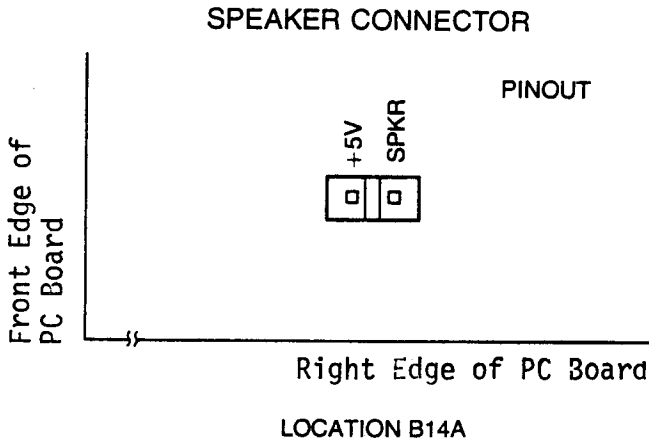
VIDEO OUTPUT JACK

This standard RCA phono jack located at the back edge of the APPLE II
P.C. board will supply NTSC compatible, EIA standard, positive composite
video to an external video monitor.

A video level control near the connector allows the output level to be
adjusted from Ø to 1 Volt (peak) into an external 75 OHM load.

Additional tint (hue) range is provided by an adjustable trimmer capacitor.

See locations illustrated in Figure 1.

AUXILIARY VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTOR

This is a MOLEX KK 100 series connector with four .25" square pins on .10" centers. It provides composite video and two power supply voltages. Video out on this connector is not adjustable by the on board 200 Ohm trim pot. See Figures 1 and 7.

SIGNAL DESCRIPTION

GND: System circuit ground. 0 Volt line from power supply.

VIDEO: NTSC compatible positive composite VIDEO. DC coupled
            emitter follower output (not short circuit protected).
            SYNC TIP is 0 Volts, black level is about .75 Volts, and
            white level is about 2.0 Volts into 470 Ohms. Output level
            is non-adjustable.

+12V: +12 Volt line from power supply.

-5V: -5 Volt line from power supply.

Figure 7   AUXILIARY VIDEO OUTPUT CONNECTOR

PINOUT

□	+12V
□	-5V
□	VIDEO
□	GND

Back Edge of PC Board

Right Edge of PC Board

LOCATION J14B

132
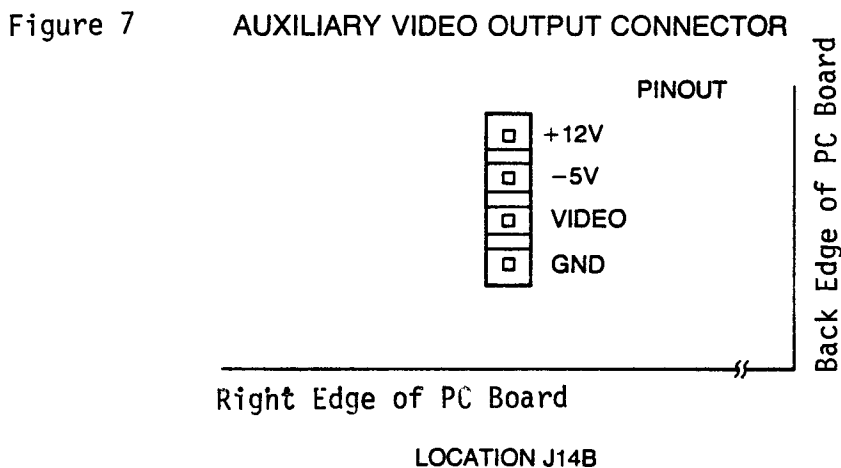
THE POSSIBILITIES

The APPLE II computer is designed to use dynamic RAM chips organized as 4096 x 1 bit, or 16384 x 1 bit called "4K" and "16K" RAMs respectively. These must be used in sets of 8 to match the system data bus (which is 8 bits wide) and are organized into rows of 8. Thus, each row may contain either 4096 (4K) or 16384 (16K) locations of Random Access Memory depending upon whether 4K or 16K chips are used. If all three rows on the APPLE II board are filled with 4K RAM chips, then 12288 (12K) memory locations will be available for storing programs or data, and if all three rows contain 16K RAM chips then 49152 (commonly called 48K) locations of RAM memory will exist on board!

RESTRICTIONS

It is quite possible to have the three rows of RAM sockets filled with any combination of 4K RAMs, 16K RAMs or empty as long as certain rules are followed:

1.   All sockets in a row must have the same type (4K or 16K) RAMs.

2.   There MUST be RAM assigned to the zero block of addresses.

ASSIGNING RAM

The APPLE II has 48K addresses available for assignment of RAM memory. Since RAM can be installed in increments as small as 4K, a means of selecting which address range each row of memory chips will respond to has been provided by the inclusion of three MEMORY SELECT sockets on board.

Figure 8

MEMORY SELECT SOCKETS
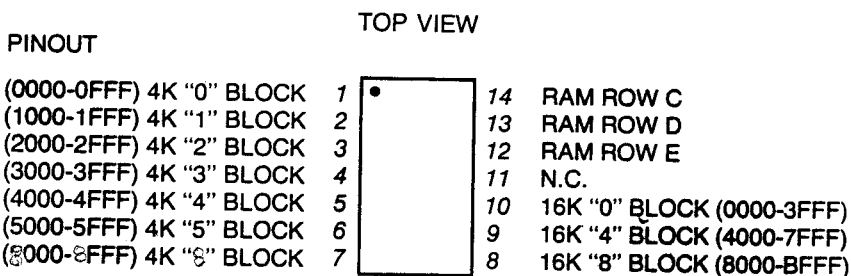
TOP VIEW

PINOUT

(0000-0FFF) 4K "0" BLOCK	1	14 RAM ROW C
(1000-1FFF) 4K "1" BLOCK	2	13 RAM ROW D
(2000-2FFF) 4K "2" BLOCK	3	12 RAM ROW E
(3000-3FFF) 4K "3" BLOCK	4	11 N.C.
(4000-4FFF) 4K "4" BLOCK	5	10 16K "0" BLOCK (0000-3FFF)
(5000-5FFF) 4K "5" BLOCK	6	9 16K "4" BLOCK (4000-7FFF)
(8000-8FFF) 4K "8" BLOCK	7	8 16K "8" BLOCK (8000-BFFF)

LOCATIONS D1, E1, F1

133

INTRODUCTION

APPLE II is supplied completely tested with the specified amount of RAM memory and correct memory select jumpers. There are five different sets of standard memory jumper blocks:

1. 4K 4K 4K BASIC
2. 4K 4K 4K HIRES
3. 16K 4K 4K
4. 16K 16K 4K
5. 16K 16K 16K

A set of three each of one of the above is supplied with the board. Type 1 is supplied with 4K or 8K systems. Both type 1 and 2 are supplied with 12K systems. Type 1 is a contiguous memory range for maximum BASIC program size. Type 2 is non-contiguous and allows 8K dedicated to HIRES screen memory with approximately 2K of user BASIC space. Type 3 is supplied with 16K, 20K and 24K systems. Type 4 with 30K and 36K systems and type 5 with 48K systems.

Additional memory may easily be added just by plugging into sockets along with correct memory jumper blocks.

The 6502 microprocessor generates a 16 bit address, which allows 65536 (commonly called 65K) different memory locations to be specified. For convenience we represent each 16 bit (binary) address as a 4-digit hexadecimal number. Hexadecimal notation (hex) is explained in the Monitor section of this manual.

In the APPLE II, certain address ranges have been assigned to RAM memory, ROM memory, the I/O bus, and hardware functions. The memory and address maps give the details.

MEMORY SELECT SOCKETS

The location and pin out for memory select sockets are illustrated in Figures 1 and 8.

HOW TO USE

There are three MEMORY SELECT sockets, located at D1, E1 and F1 respectively. RAM memory is assigned to various address ranges by inserting jumper wires as described below. All three MEMORY SELECT sockets MUST be jumpered identically! The easiest way to do this is to use Apple supplied memory blocks.

Let us learn by example:

If you have plugged 16K RAMs into row "C" (the sockets located at C3-C10 on the board), and you want them to occupy the first 16K of addresses starting at 0000, jumper pin 14 to pin 10 on all three MEMORY SELECT sockets (thereby assigning row "C" to the 0000-3FFF range of memory).

If in addition you have inserted 4K RAMs into rows "D" and "E", and you want them each to occupy the first 4K addresses starting at 4000 and 5000 respectively, jumper pin 13 to pin 5 (thereby assigning row "D" to the 4000-4FFF range of memory), and jumper pin 12 to pin 6 (thereby assigning row "E" to the 5000-5FFF range of memory). Remember to jumper all three MEMORY SELECT sockets the same.

Now you have a large contiguous range of addresses filled with RAM memory. This is the 24K addresses from 0000-5FFF.

By following the above examples you should be able to assign each row of RAM to any address range allowed on the MEMORY SELECT sockets. Remember that to do this properly you must know three things:

> 1. Which rows have RAM installed?
>
> 2. Which address ranges do you want them to occupy?
>
> 3. Jumper all three MEMORY SELECT sockets the same!

If you are not sure think carefully, essentially all the necessary information is given above.

Memory Address Allocations in 4K Bytes

0000	text and color graphics display pages, 6502 stack, pointers, etc.
1000	
2000	high res graphics display primary page " " " " "
3000	"
4000	high res. graphics display secondary page " " " "
5000	"
6000	"
7000	

8000	
9000	
A000	
B000	
C000	addresses dedicated to hardware functions " "
D000	ROM socket D0: spare " ROM socket D8: spare
E000	ROM socket E0: BASIC " ROM socket E8: BASIC
F000	ROM socket F0: BASIC utility ROM socket F8: monitor

Memory Map Pages Ø to BFF

HEX ADDRESS(ES)	USED BY	USED FOR	COMMENTS
PAGE ZERO 0000-001F	UTILITY	register area for "sweet 16" 16 bit firmware processor.	
0020-004D	MONITOR		
004E-004F	MONITOR	holds a 16 bit number that is randomized with each key entry.	
0050-0055	UTILITY	integer multiply and divide work space.	
0055-00FF	BASIC		
00F0- 00FF	UTILITY	floating point work space.	
PAGE ONE 0100-01FF	6502	subroutine return stack.	
PAGE TWO 0200-02FF		character input buffer.	
PAGE THREE 03F8	MONITOR	Y_c (control Y) will cause a JSR to this location.	
03FB		NMI's are vectored to this location.	
03FE-03FF		IRQ's are vectored to the address pointed to by these locations.	
0400-07FF	DISPLAY	text or color graphics primary page.	
0800-0BFF	DISPLAY	text or color graphics secondary page.	BASIC initializes LOMEM to location 0800.

HEX ADDRESS	ASSIGNED FUNCTION	COMMENTS
C00X	Keyboard input.	Keyboard strobe appears in bit 7. ASCII data from keyboard appears in the 7 lower bits.
C01X	Clear keyboard strobe.	
C02X	Toggle cassette output.	
C03X	Toggle speaker output.	
C04X	"C040 $\overline{STB}$"	Output strobe to Game I/O connector.
C050	Set graphics mode	
C051	" text "	
C052	Set bottom 4 lines graphics	
C053	" " " " text	
C054	Display primary page	
C055	" secondary page	
C056	Set high res. graphics	
C057	" color "	
C058	Clear "AN0"	Annunciator 0 output to Game I/O connector.
C059	Set "	
C05A	Clear "AN1"	Annunciator 1 output to Game I/O connector.
C05B	Set "	
C05C	Clear "AN2"	Annunciator 2 output to Game I/O connector.
C05D	Set "	
C05E	Clear "AN3"	Annunciator 3 output to Game I/O connector.
C05F	Set "	

HEX ADDRESS	ASSIGNED FUNCTION		COMMENTS
C060/8	Cassette input		State of "Cassette Data In" appears in bit 7.
C061/9	"SW1"		State of Switch 1 $\wedge$ input on Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.
C062/A	"SW2"		State of Switch 2 input on Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.
C063/B	"SW3"		State of Switch 3 input on Game I/O connector appears in bit 7.
C064/C	Paddle 0 timer output		State of timer output for Paddle 0 appears in bit 7.
C065/D	" 1 " "		State of timer output for Paddle 1 appears in bit 7.
C066/E	" 2 " "		State of timer output for Paddle 2 appears in bit 7.
C067/F	" 3 " "		State of timer output for Paddle 3 appears in bit 7.
C07X	"$\overline{\text{PDL STB}}$"		Triggers paddle timers during ϕ_2.
C08X	$\overline{\text{DEVICE SELECT}}$	0	Pin 41 on the selected Peripheral Connector goes low during ϕ_2.
C09X	"	1	
C0AX	"	2	
C0BX	"	3	
C0CX	"	4	
C0DX	"	5	
C0EX	"	6	
C0FX	"	7	
C10X	"	8	Expansion connectors.
C11X	"	9	"
C12X	"	A	"

138

HEX ADDRESS	ASSIGNED FUNCTION			COMMENTS
C13X	DEVICE SELECT	B		"
C14X	"	C		"
C15X	"	D		"
C16X	"	E		"
C17X	"	F		"
C1XX	I/O SELECT	1		Pin 1 on the selected Peripheral Connector goes low during $\emptyset_2$.
C2XX	"	2		NOTES:
C3XX	"	3		1. Peripheral Connector 0 does not get this signal.
C4XX	"	4		
C5XX	"	5		2. I/O SELECT 1 uses the same addresses as DEVICE SELECT 8-F.
C6XX	"	6		
C7XX	"	7		
C8XX	"	8,	I/O STROBE	Expansion connectors.
C9XX	"	9,	"	
CAXX	"	A,	"	
CBXX	"	B,	"	
CCXX	"	C,	"	
CDXX	"	D,	"	
CEXX	"	E,	"	
CFXX	"	F,	"	
D000-D7FF	ROM socket D0			Spare.
D800-DFFF	" " D8			Spare.
E000-E7FF	" " E0			BASIC.
E800-EFFF	" " E8			BASIC.
F000-F7FF	" " F0			1K of BASIC, 1K of utility.
F800-FFFF	" " F8			Monitor.

SYSTEM TIMING

SIGNAL DESCRIPTIONS

14M: Master oscillator output, 14.318 MHz +/- 35 ppm. All other timing signals are derived from this one.

7M: Intermediate timing signal, 7.159 MHz.

COLOR REF: Color reference frequency used by video circuitry, 3.580 MHz.

$\emptyset_0$: Phase $\emptyset$ clock to microprocessor, 1.023 MHz nominal.

$\emptyset_1$: Microprocessor phase 1 clock, complement of $\emptyset_0$, 1.023 MHz nominal.

$\emptyset_2$: Same as $\emptyset_0$. Included here because the 6502 hardware and programming manuals use the designation $\emptyset_2$ instead of $\emptyset_0$.

Q3: A general purpose timing signal which occurs at the same rate as the microprocessor clocks but is nonsymmetrical.

MICROPROCESSOR OPERATIONS

ADDRESS: The address from the microprocessor changes during $\emptyset_1$, and is stable about 300nS after the start of $\emptyset_1$.

DATA WRITE: During a write cycle, data from the microprocessor appears on the data bus during $\emptyset_2$, and is stable about 300nS after the start of $\emptyset_2$.

DATA READ: During a read cycle, the microprocessor will expect data to appear on the data bus no less than 100nS prior to the end of $\emptyset_2$.

SYSTEM TIMING DIAGRAM

TIMING CIRCUITRY BLOCK DIAGRAM

TIMING RELATIONSHIPS

140
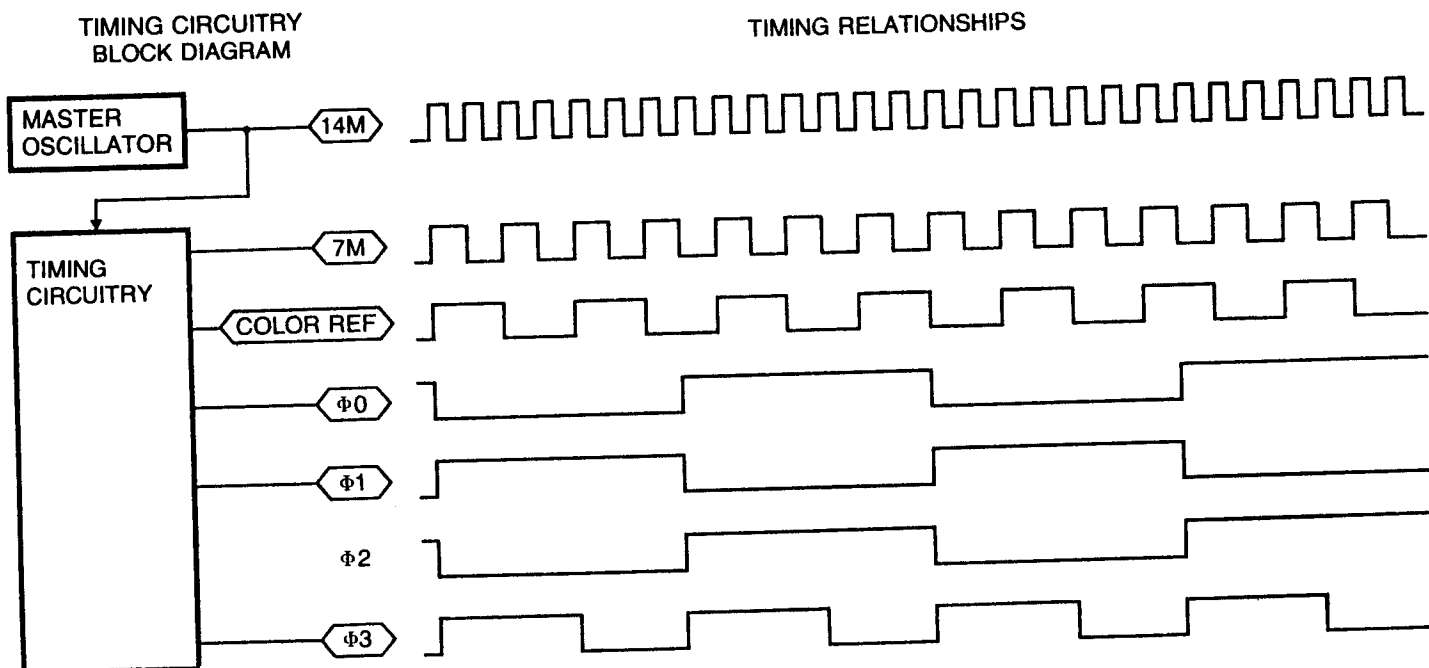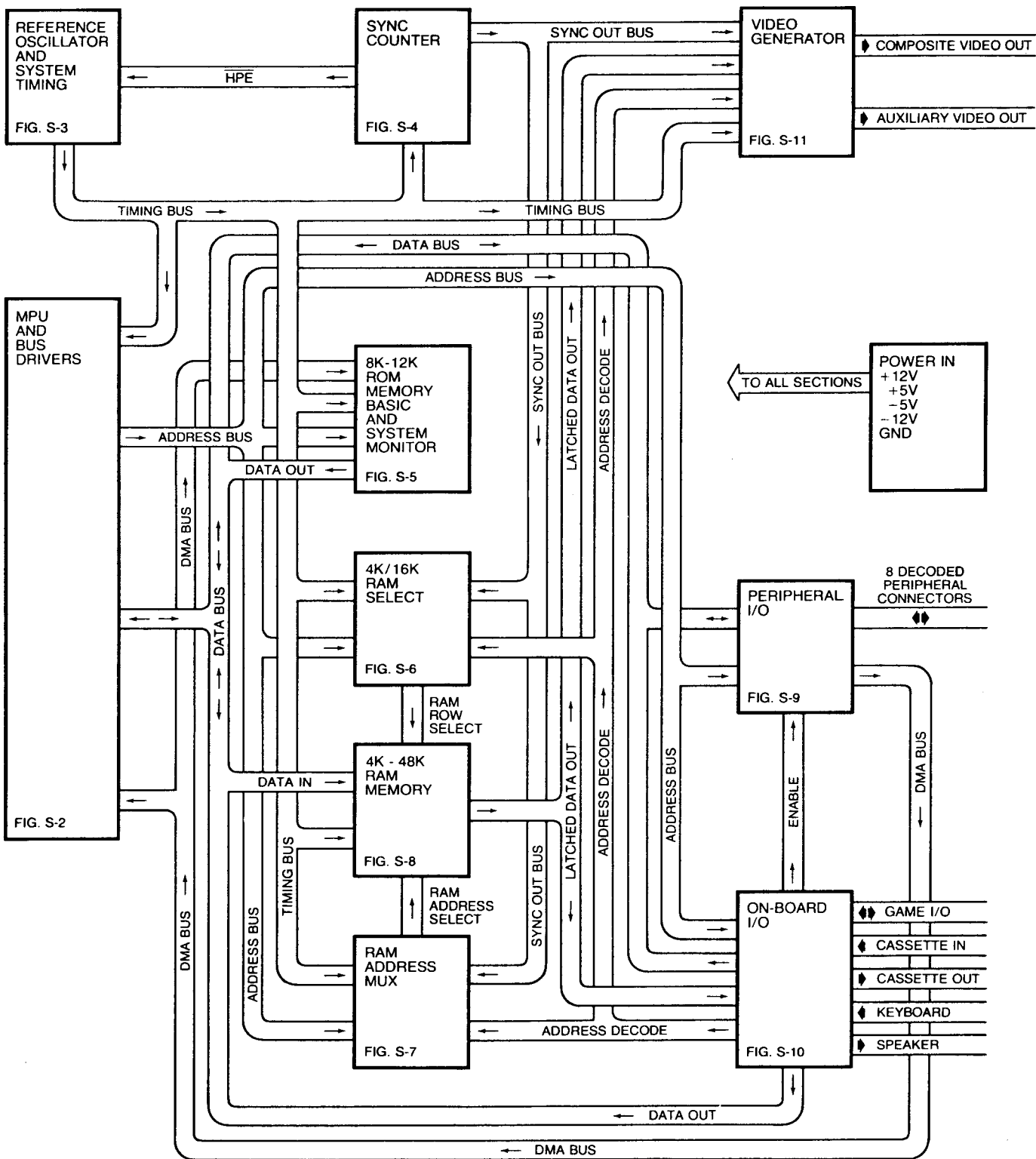
FIGURE S-1 APPLE II SYSTEM DIAGRAM

141
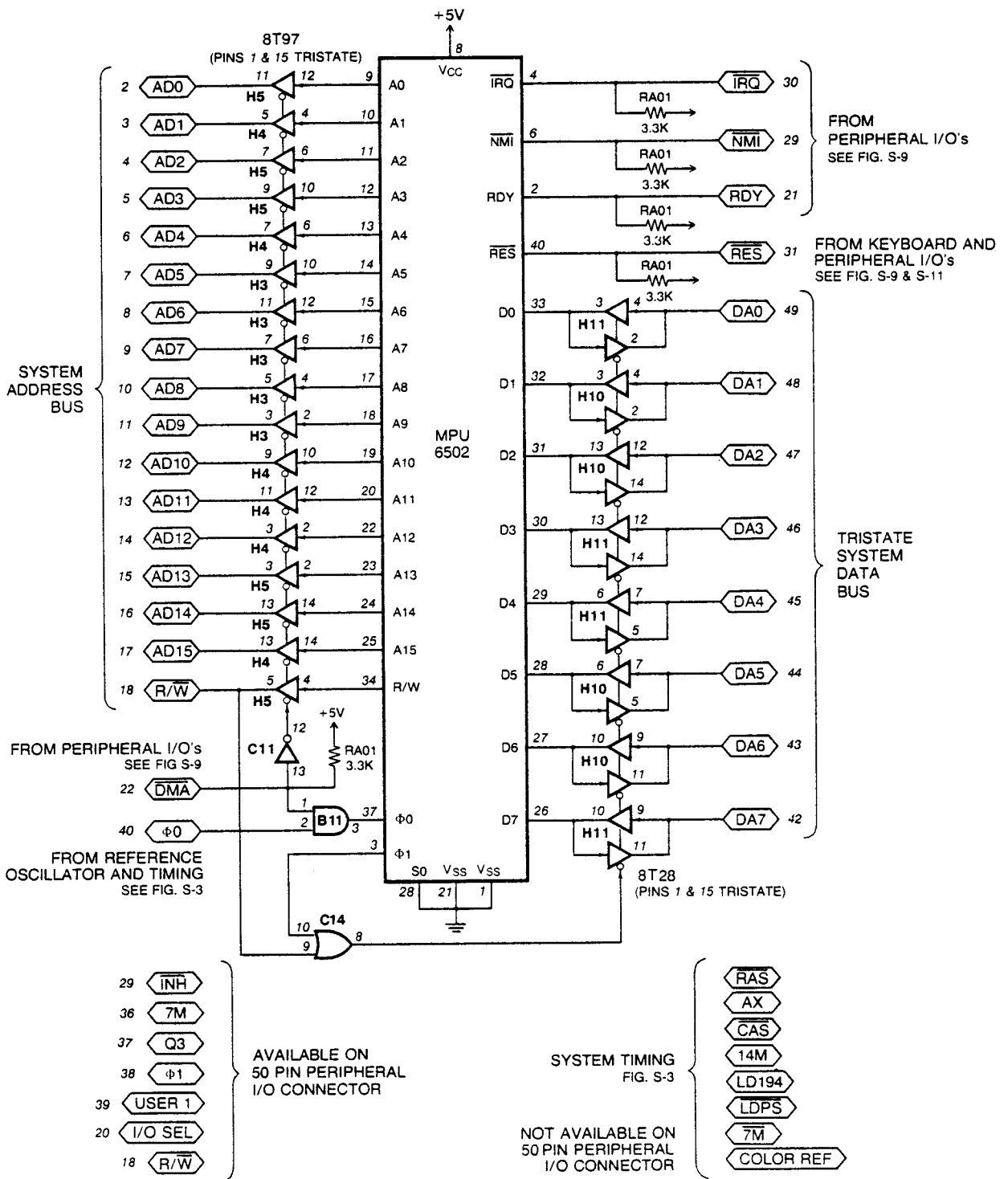
FIGURE S-2 MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

142
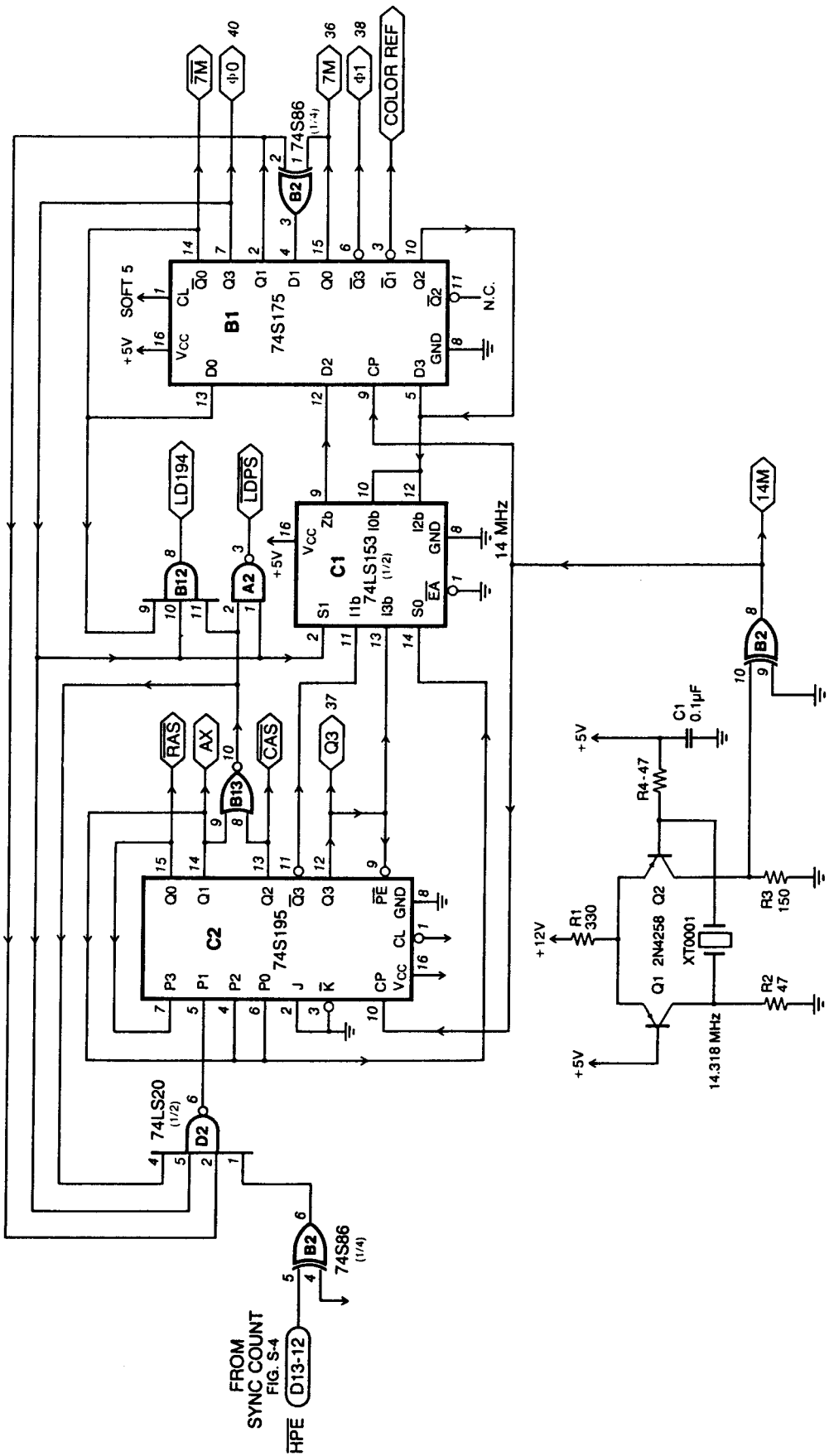
FIGURE S-3 REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYSTEM TIMING

143

SOFT 5   +5V   SYNC OUT

7 V_CC   16
        CEP   Q0   14   (D14-14) H0
10 CET   Q1   13   (D14-13) H1
1 CLR   D14 Q2   12   (D14-12) H2
3 P0   Q3   11   (D14-11) H3
4 P1   74LS161
5 P2
6 P3
           PE   9
2 CL   TC GND
        15   8

SOFT 5   +5V
              16   10 7
1 V_CC CET CEP
   CLR   PE   9
5 P2   D13 Q2   12   (D13-12) $\overline{HPE}$
3 P0   74LS161 Q0 14   (D13-14) H4
4 P1   Q1   13   (D13-13) H5
              Q3   11   (D13-11) VA
2 CL   TC P3 6
        15   8

        +5V
              16   10 7
3 V_CC CET CEP
   P0   Q0   14   (D12-14) VB
5 P2   D12 Q1   13   (D12-13) VC
6 P3   74LS161 Q2 12   (D12-12) V0
SOFT 5 1 CLR   Q3   11   (D12-11) V1
4 P1
2 CL   PE   9
        TC GND
        15   8

        +5V
              16   10 7
3 V_CC CET CEP
   P0   PE   9
4 P1   D11 TC   15 ▷o 8
5 P2   74LS161 Q0 14   (D11-14) V2
SOFT 5 1 CLR   Q1   13   (D11-13) V3
6 P3   Q2   12   (D11-12) V4
2 CL   Q3   11   N.C.
              GND
               8

FROM
SYSTEM   CLOCK IN
TIME   ⟨LDPS⟩
FIG. S-3

FIGURE S-4   SYNC COUNTER

144

ROM PINOUT DETAIL

ROM MEMORY ARRAY

FIGURE S-5 ROM MEMORY

145
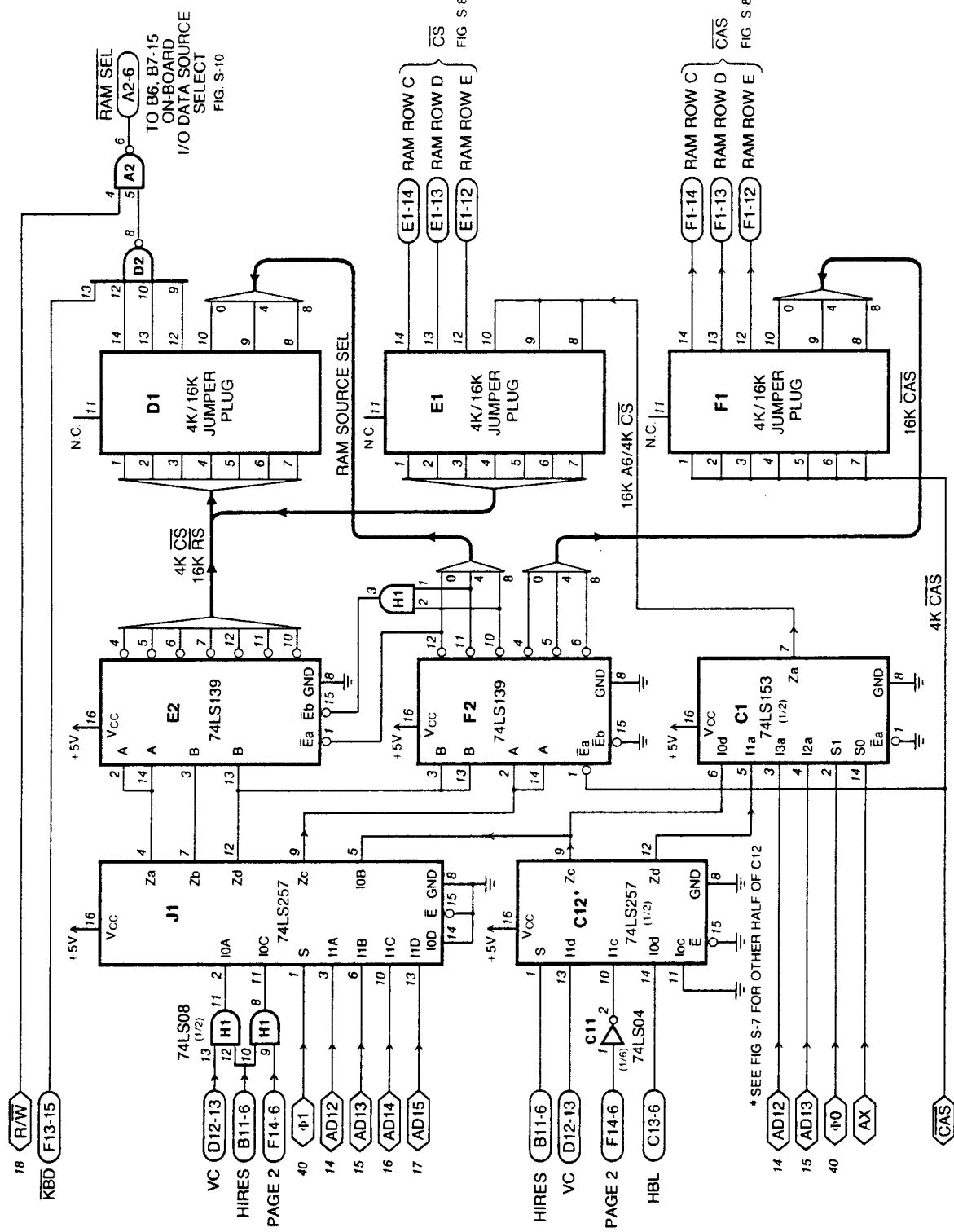
FIGURE S-6 4K/16K RAM SELECT

146

"D" SOURCES ARE
FROM SYNC COUNT
FIG. S-4

SCREEN
ADDRESS
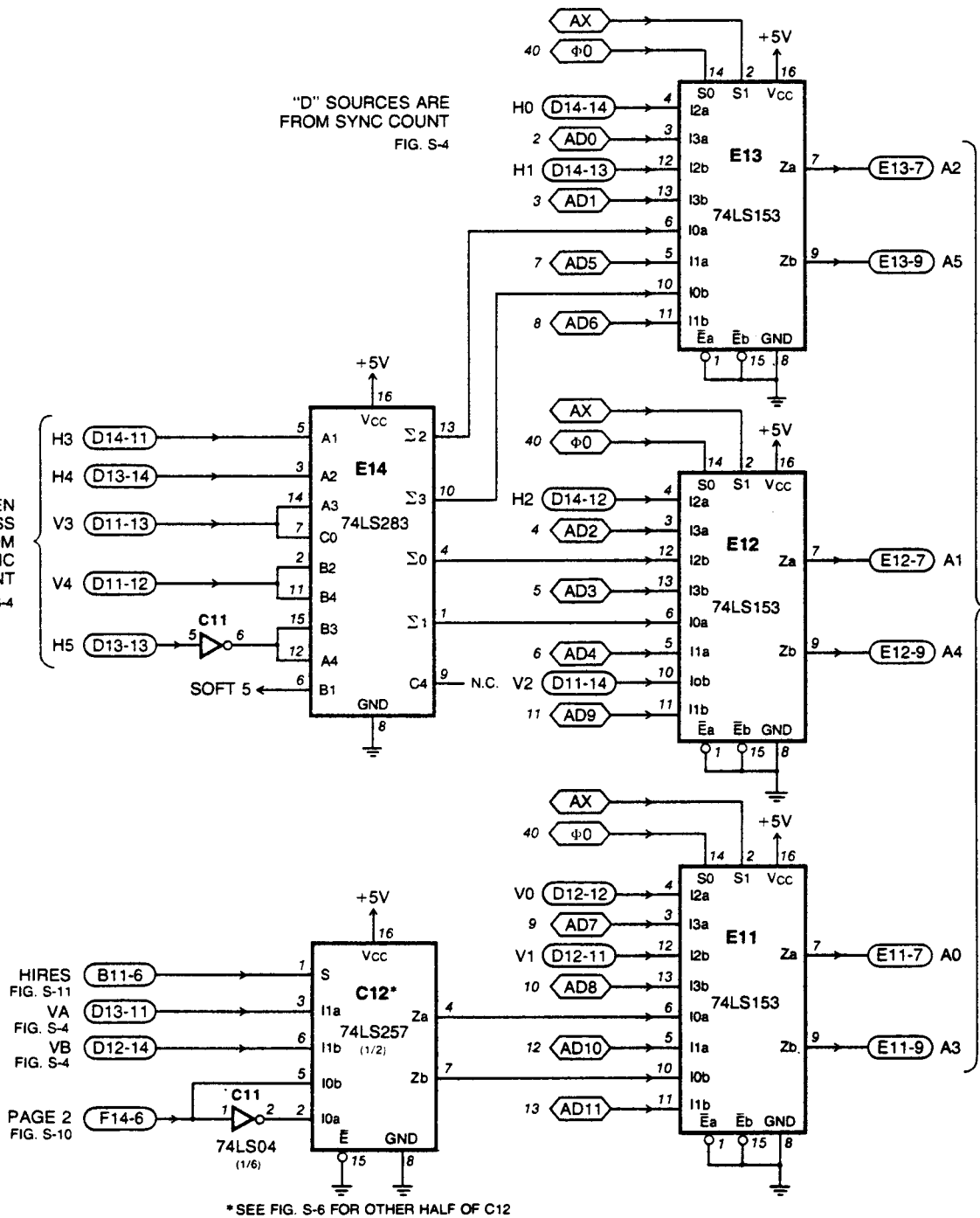FROM
SYNC
COUNT
FIG. S-4

TO
RAM
ADDRESS
LINES
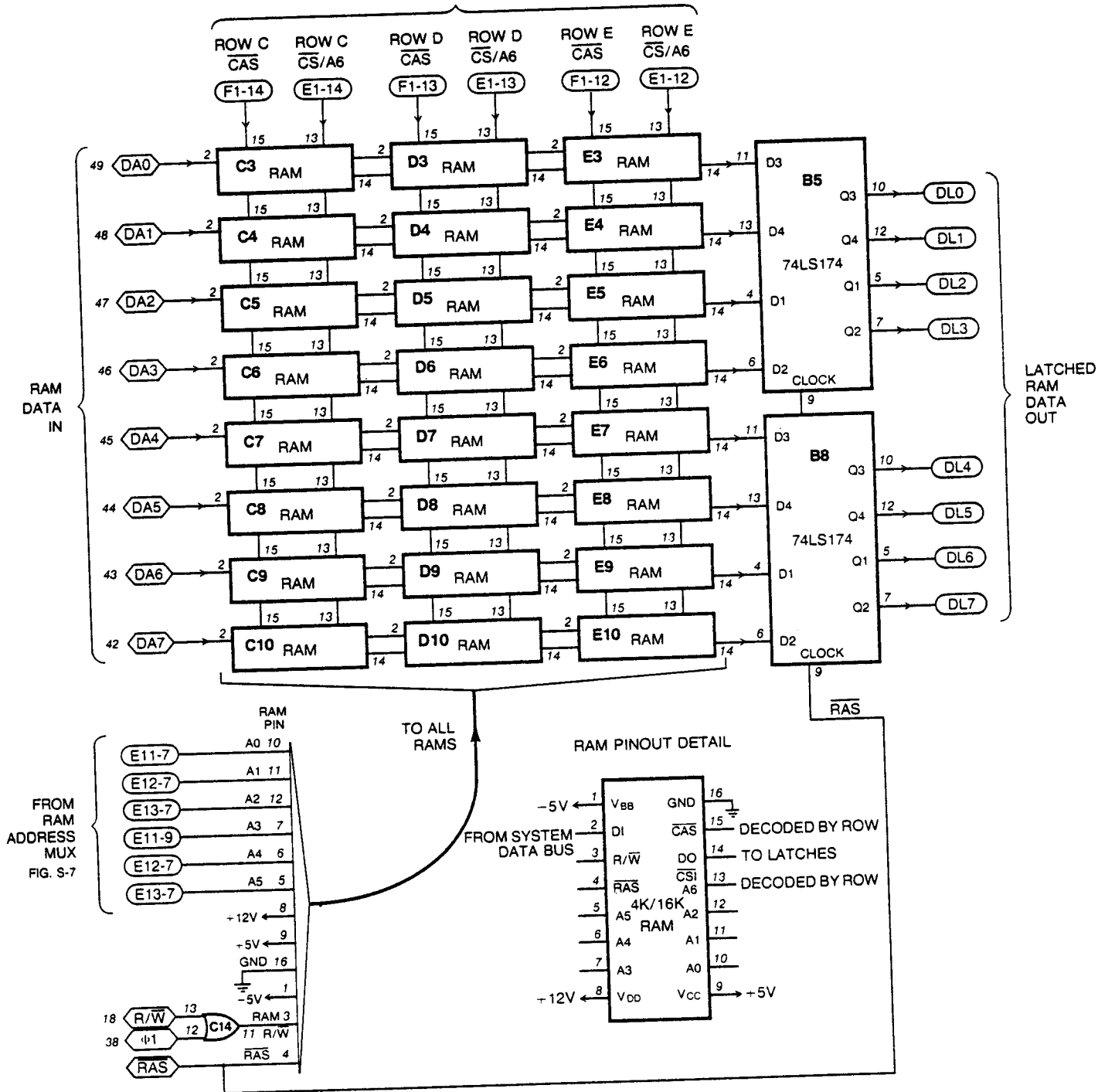FIG. S-8

* SEE FIG. S-6 FOR OTHER HALF OF C12

FIGURE S-7   RAM ADDRESS MUX
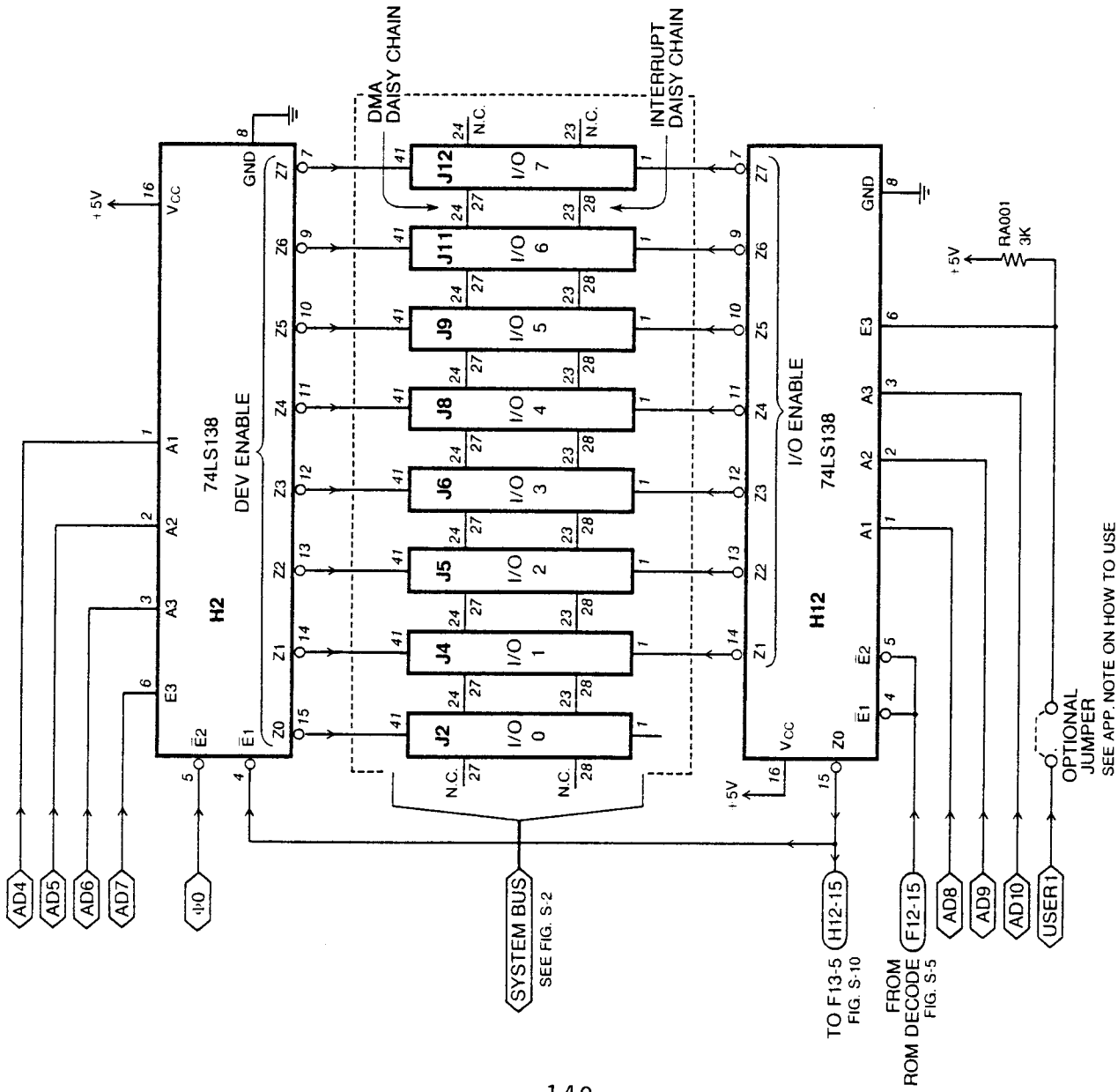
147

FIGURE S-8   4K TO 48K RAM MEMORY WITH DATA LATCH
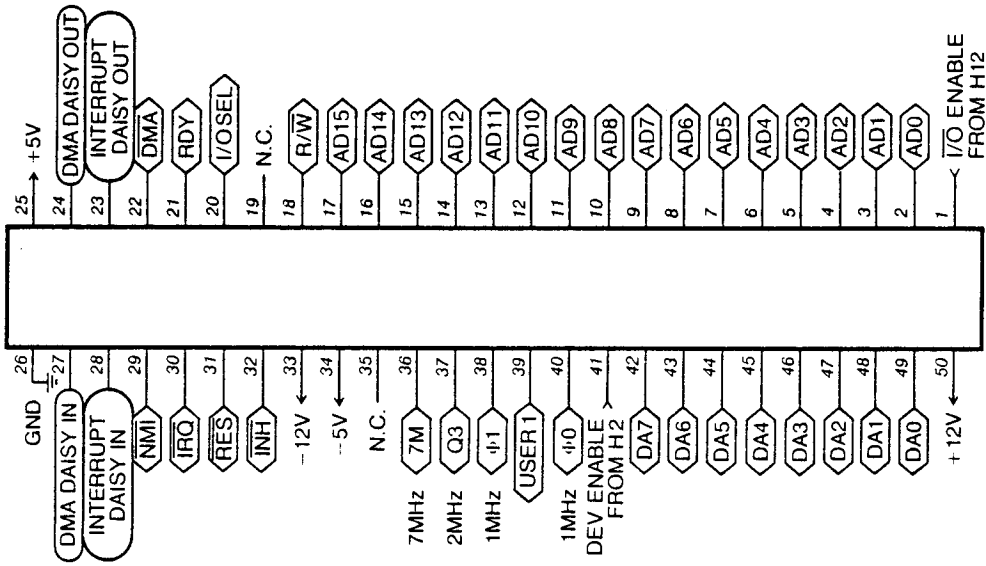
FIGURE S-9 PERIPHERIAL I/O CONNECTOR PINOUT AND CONTROL LOGIC
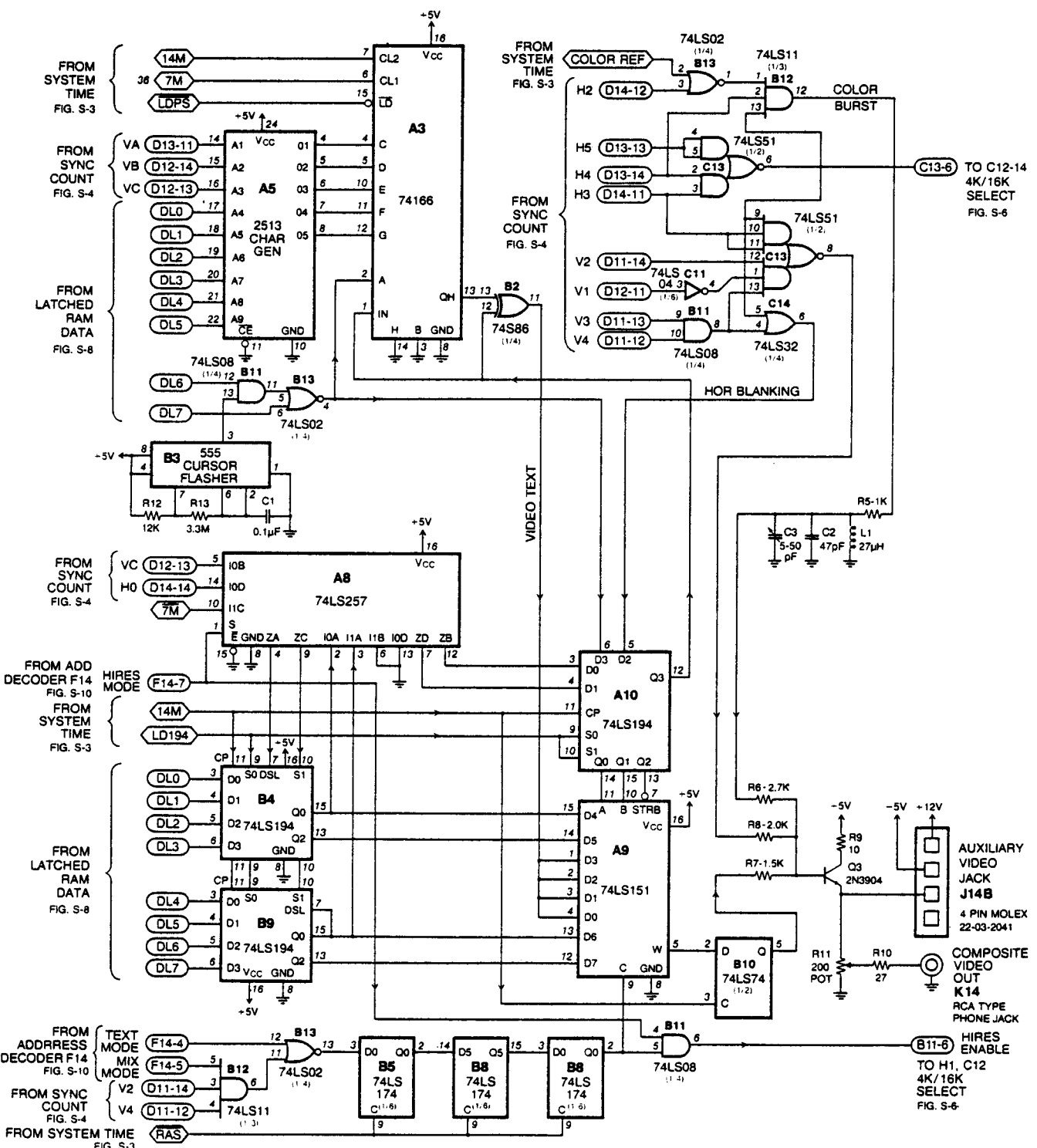
149
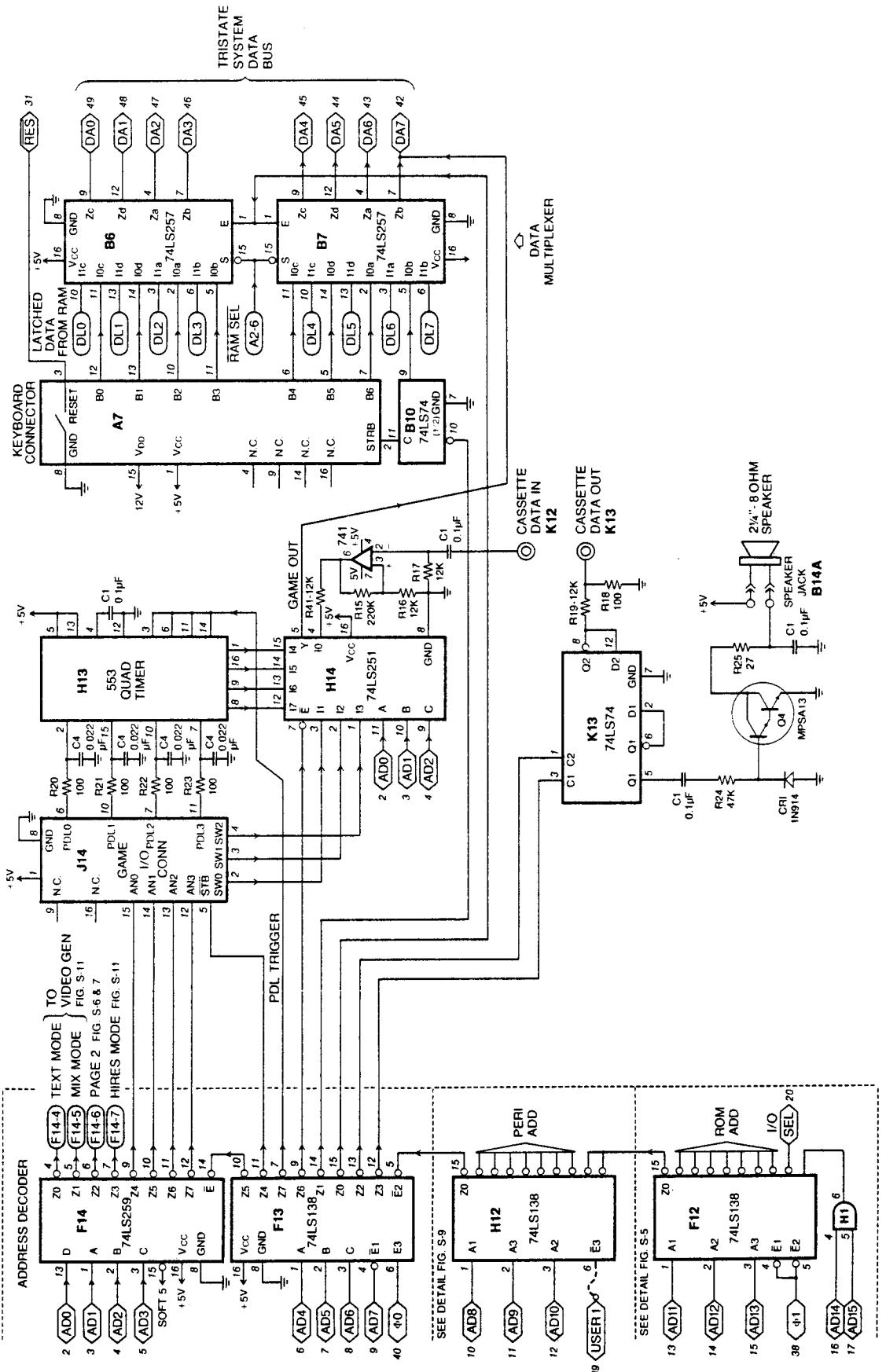
FIGURE S-10 ON-BOARD I/O

150

FIGURE S-11   VIDEO GENERATOR

151

apple computer inc.